This book is a collection of in-depth chapters on many aspects of contemporary cancer treatment. Written by experts worldwide, each chapter provides a detailed summary of the state-of-the-art knowledge in the area, with extensive references and clear and informative diagrams. The volume is divided into two sections: “Basic Science” and “Clinical Challenges.” The five chapters in the first section cover MicroRNA, the role of angiogenesis in the tumor microenvironment, microbial metabolites in the gastrointestinal microenvironment, the role of dendritic cells in anti-tumor immunity, and challenges of current cancer biomarkers. The two chapters in the second section cover pediatric CNS tumors and the role of sentinel node biopsy in endometrial cancer. The information in this book is designed for cancer clinicians and interested readers to whom this knowledge is important for focusing research and improving patient outcomes.
Supporting open minds since 2005
We are IntechOpen, the world’s leading publisher of Open Access books
Built by scientists, for scientists

4,900+ Open access books available
123,000+ International authors and editors
140M+ Downloads

151 Countries delivered to
Top 1% Our authors are among the most cited scientists
12.2% Contributors from top 500 universities

WEB OF SCIENCE™
Selection of our books indexed in the Book Citation Index in Web of Science™ Core Collection (BKCI)

Interested in publishing with us?
Contact book.department@intechopen.com

Numbers displayed above are based on latest data collected.
For more information visit www.intechopen.com
Meet the editors

Assistant Professor Mirjana Rajer, MD, PhD, graduated from the Faculty of Medicine at the University of Ljubljana in 2001. For two years, she worked at the University Clinic Golnik, Slovenia. Currently, she works at the Institute of Oncology Ljubljana. Her main clinical work consists of treatment of lung cancer and mesothelioma patients. She is also involved as principal and co-investigator in several clinical trials of lung cancer, palliative care, and communication with cancer patients. She serves as an editor for national and international journals and is author of numerous published papers, book chapters, and books. Being a student mentor, Dr. Rajer is actively involved in education. She is an active member of the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC), European Society for Medical Oncology (ESMO), International Association for the Study of Lung Cancer (IASLC), and the Central European Initiative against Lung Cancer.

Eva Segelov, MBBS, PhD, FRACP, is Professor of Medicine at Monash University and Director of Oncology at Monash Health, Melbourne, Australia. She is a practicing medical oncologist with more than 20 years’ experience, specializing in gastrointestinal cancer and neuroendocrine tumors, with an international reputation in clinical trials and translational research. Professor Segelov is a board member of the Australasian Gastrointestinal Trials Group; Gastrointestinal Chair of the Clinical Oncology Society of Australia; European Society of Medical Oncology faculty member for the CUP, Endocrine Tumours, and Others group; co-founder of the Commonwealth Neuroendocrine Tumour Society (CommNETS); Associate Editor of Journal of Global Oncology and a cancer editor for the Journal of Visualized Experiments. She heads a translational research laboratory specializing in interrogating clinical trial biospecimens. Professor Segelov has published more than 150 articles, expert reviews and book chapters and is a frequent invited speaker at national and international conferences. She is a member of the Australasian L’Oréal-UNESCO for Women in Science jury.
Section 1
Basic Science

Chapter 1 3
MicroRNA: A Signature for Cancer Diagnostics
by Ayesha Siddiqua, Sumaira Kousar, Amer Jamil, Riaz Tabassum, Tariq Mehmood and Nusrat Shafiq

Chapter 2 39
Angiogenesis and Its Role in the Tumour Microenvironment: A Target for Cancer Therapy
by Sophia Frentzas, Caroline Lum and Ting-Yu Chen

Chapter 3 75
The Influence of Microbial Metabolites in the Gastrointestinal Microenvironment on Anticancer Immunity
by Silke Neumann, Estelle M. Peyroux, Matt J. Woodall, Nick J. Shields, Sarah L. Young and Sharon T. Pattison

Chapter 4 101
Dendritic Cells and Their Roles in Anti-Tumour Immunity
by Ee Shan Pang, Christophe Macri, Timothy Patton, Mariam Bafit and Meredith O’Keeffe

Chapter 5 129
What Are the New Challenges of the Current Cancer Biomarkers?
by Jie Chen, Liqiong Yang, Yuxi Duan, Tinging Pu, Sha Zheng, Fangfang Liu, Kun Huang, Greg Mirt and Fan Xu

Section 2
Clinical Challenges

Chapter 6 147
An Overview of Pediatric CNS Malignancies
by Neha Sharma and Deepti Sharma

Chapter 7 173
Role of Sentinel Node Biopsy in Endometrial Cancer
by Begoña Díaz de la Noval
# Contents

## Preface

XIII

## Section 1

### Basic Science

1

### Chapter 1

MicroRNA: A Signature for Cancer Diagnostics

by Ayesha Siddiqua, Sumaira Kousar, Amer Jamil, Riaz Tabassum, Tariq Mehmood and Nusrat Shafiq

3

### Chapter 2

Angiogenesis and Its Role in the Tumour Microenvironment: A Target for Cancer Therapy

by Sophia Frentzas, Caroline Lum and Ting-Yu Chen

39

### Chapter 3

The Influence of Microbial Metabolites in the Gastrointestinal Microenvironment on Anticancer Immunity

by Silke Neumann, Estelle M. Peyroux, Matt J. Woodall, Nick J. Shields, Sarah L. Young and Sharon T. Pattison

75

### Chapter 4

Dendritic Cells and Their Roles in Anti-Tumour Immunity

by Ee Shan Pang, Christophe Macri, Timothy Patton, Mariam Bafit and Meredith O’Keeffe

101

### Chapter 5

What Are the New Challenges of the Current Cancer Biomarkers?

by Jie Chen, Liqiong Yang, Yuxi Duan, Tinging Pu, Sha Zheng, Fangfang Liu, Kun Huang, Greg Mirt and Fan Xu

129

## Section 2

### Clinical Challenges

145

### Chapter 6

An Overview of Pediatric CNS Malignancies

by Neha Sharma and Deepi Sharma

147

### Chapter 7

Role of Sentinel Node Biopsy in Endometrial Cancer

by Begoña Díaz de la Noval

173
Cancer is the leading cause of death worldwide, and as such, research in this field remains one of the most important healthcare priorities. This book elucidates some of the new concepts in cancer research, including basic science and open questions in cancer treatment. Chapters cover a broad spectrum of currently very relevant topics, from biomarkers and immunotherapy to some unanswered questions in everyday clinical practice. Biomarkers are extremely important tools for early detection and prediction of cancer prognosis and response to therapeutic interventions. Authors comment on the value of miRNA as a biomarker, which seems to be a new and very promising one. In addition to biomarkers, two other hot topics are covered: angiogenesis and immunotherapy. There are many open questions regarding treatment with these two modalities. Angiogenesis has been a target for quite a few years, but there are still issues to address such as non-optimal therapeutic scenarios, lack of biomarkers and poor understanding of mechanisms of resistance. In recent years, immunotherapy has become one of the cornerstones of cancer treatment. Chapters describe both angiogenesis and immunotherapy as well as examine the influence of gastrointestinal microenvironement and the role of dendritic cells. Regarding cancer treatment, the recent trend is to try to deescalate treatment intensity and to spare patients avoidable side effects, of course with the same oncological results. Sentinel node biopsy for uterine cancer, as described in this book, is an important step toward this goal. Finally, the book addresses pediatric central nervous system tumors, which are the second most common childhood tumors, and reviews current treatment options and efforts to reduce morbidity and mortality.

I would like to thank all the authors and my co-editor, Prof. Eva Segelov. They accomplished an excellent task. It was a privilege collaborating with them. I sincerely hope that this book will help readers, leading them to new horizons of cancer care and enlightening them to generate new research ideas.

Mirjana Rajer, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor,
Institute of Oncology Ljubljana,
Ljubljana, Slovenia
Eva Segelov
Professor,
MBBS (Hons 1) PhD FRACP
Professor/Director of Oncology,
Monash Health and Monash University,
Australia
Board Member, Australasian Gastrointestinal Trials Group (AGITG)
Co-Founder, Commonwealth Neuroendocrine Tumour Collaboration (CommNETS)
Cancer is the leading cause of death worldwide, and as such, research in this field remains one of the most important healthcare priorities. This book elucidates some of the new concepts in cancer research, including basic science and open questions in cancer treatment. Chapters cover a broad spectrum of currently very relevant topics, from biomarkers and immunotherapy to some unanswered questions in everyday clinical practice. Biomarkers are extremely important tools for early detection and prediction of cancer prognosis and response to therapeutic interventions. Authors comment on the value of miRNA as a biomarker, which seems to be a new and very promising one. In addition to biomarkers, two other hot topics are covered: angiogenesis and immunotherapy. There are many open questions regarding treatment with these two modalities. Angiogenesis has been a target for quite a few years, but there are still issues to address such as non-optimal therapeutic scenarios, lack of biomarkers and poor understanding of mechanisms of resistance. In recent years, immunotherapy has become one of the cornerstones of cancer treatment. Chapters describe both angiogenesis and immunotherapy as well as examine the influence of gastrointestinal microenvironment and the role of dendritic cells. Regarding cancer treatment, the recent trend is to try to deescalate treatment intensity and to spare patients avoidable side effects, of course with the same oncological results. Sentinel node biopsy for uterine cancer, as described in this book, is an important step toward this goal. Finally, the book addresses pediatric central nervous system tumors, which are the second most common childhood tumors, and reviews current treatment options and efforts to reduce morbidity and mortality.

I would like to thank all the authors and my co-editor, Prof. Eva Segelov. They accomplished an excellent task. It was a privilege collaborating with them. I sincerely hope that this book will help readers, leading them to new horizons of cancer care and enlightening them to generate new research ideas.

Mirjana Rajer, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor,
Institute of Oncology Ljubljana,
Ljubljana, Slovenia

Eva Segelov
Professor,
MBBS (Hons 1) PhD FRACP,
Professor/Director of Oncology,
Monash Health and Monash University,
Australia

Board Member, Australasian Gastrointestinal Trials Group (AGITG)
Co-Founder, Commonwealth Neuroendocrine Tumour Collaboration (CommNETS)
Section 1

Basic Science
Chapter 1
MicroRNA: A Signature for Cancer Diagnostics

Ayesha Siddiqua, Sumaira Kousar, Amer Jamil, Riaz Tabassum, Tariq Mehmood and Nusrat Shafiq

Abstract
Various tools and techniques are being used for the diagnosis of cancer, but not a sole technique provides powerful result at the very early stages of cancer. This provides the need for type of tools which could detect cancer at early stages so that survival rate could be augmented. There are various diagnostic ways to identify cancer, but in each case, there are always circumstances to compromise on the sensitivity. In this framework, a new and more advanced approach of diagnosis for cancer is microRNA (miRNA). miRNAs are conserved regions among humans and animals, and their synthesis takes place in the nucleus and cytoplasm. There are several types of microRNAs that could be upregulated and downregulated in various cancers. A cancer cell could be identified by measurement of the expression pattern of miRNA. By examining the expression level for different types of cancers, miRNA can be used as biomarker for early detection of cancer in human beings.

Keywords: microRNA, cancer biomarker, diagnostic, colorectal, upregulation, downregulation, breast cancer, cervical, liver, prostate

1. Introduction
MicroRNAs (miRNAs) are a small, non-coding, single-stranded RNA consisting of around 22 nucleotides [1]. More than 3% of the human genome (gene portion) encodes for microRNA, and their number is around 1000 [2–4]. This small RNA can regulate gene expression posttranscriptionally [5–7]. This small RNA can regulate gene expression posttranscriptionally by binding to its cognate RNA target at the 3' untranslated region (3' UTR) [8–11]. A small microRNA was discovered for the first time in C. elegans and is encoded by the Lin-4 gene [12] providing evidence for its evolutionary conservation. This conserved microRNA was found to be involved in many important biological processes including cell proliferation, growth, apoptosis, etc. [13, 14], and many cell-based factors have been known to regulate its expression [15]. The genes transcribing the miRNA are considered to belong to the set of tumor suppressor genes, and the serum level of miRNA can be detected [16, 17]. There are certain miRNAs that can behave as either oncomiRs (whose expression can cause the cancer) or tumor suppressor depending on the context [18].
Chapter 1

MicroRNA: A Signature for Cancer Diagnostics

Ayesha Siddiqua, Sumaira Kousar, Amer Jamil, Riaz Tabassum, Tariq Mehmood and Nusrat Shafiq

Abstract

Various tools and techniques are being used for the diagnosis of cancer, but not a sole technique provides powerful result at the very early stages of cancer. This provides the need for type of tools which could detect cancer at early stages so that survival rate could be augmented. There are various diagnostic ways to identify cancer, but in each case, there are always circumstances to compromise on the sensitivity. In this framework, a new and more advanced approach of diagnosis for cancer is microRNA (miRNA). miRNAs are conserved regions among humans and animals, and their synthesis takes place in the nucleus and cytoplasm. There are several types of microRNAs that could be upregulated and downregulated in various cancers. A cancer cell could be identified by measurement of the expression pattern of miRNA. By examining the expression level for different types of cancers, miRNA can be used as biomarker for early detection of cancer in human beings.

Keywords: microRNA, cancer biomarker, diagnostic, colorectal, upregulation, downregulation, breast cancer, cervical, liver, prostate

1. Introduction

MicroRNAs (miRNAs) are a small, non-coding, single-stranded RNA consisting of around 22 nucleotides [1]. More than 3% of the human genome (gene portion) encodes for microRNA, and their number is around 1000 [2–4]. This small RNA can regulate gene expression posttranscriptionally [5–7]. This small RNA can regulate gene expression posttranscriptionally by binding to its cognate RNA target at the 3′ untranslated region (UTR) [8–11]. A small microRNA was discovered for the first time in C. elegans and is encoded by the Lin-4 gene [12] providing evidence for its evolutionary conservation. This conserved microRNA was found to be involved in many important biological processes including cell proliferation, growth, apoptosis, etc. [13, 14], and many cell-based factors have been known to regulate its expression [15]. The genes transcribing the miRNA are considered to belong to the set of tumor suppressor genes, and the serum level of miRNA can be detected [16, 17]. There are certain miRNAs that can behave as either oncomiRs (whose expression can cause the cancer) or tumor suppressor depending on the context “Several miRNAs cannot be clearly and unequivocally categorized as tumor suppressors or oncomiRs because data in our hands are quite intricate and conflicting since they could act as tumor suppressors in one scenario or as oncomiRs in the other” [18].
2. Synthesis/biogenesis of miRNA

Synthesis of miRNA takes place in the nucleus as well as in the cytoplasm. Genes encoding miRNAs are present in the form of a cluster and contain introns (Figure 1). These genes are transcribed by polymerase II with the generation of the primary precursor pri-miRNA. This precursor miRNA consists of a 3’ poly-A tail and a 5’ end cap [19, 20] with a stem-loop structure. RNase 3 Drosha cleaves this structure with the help of its Pasha cofactor DGCR8. This resultant cleaved, precursor structure is known as pre-miRNA and consists of ~70–90 nucleotides [21]. This ~70 nt precursor is exported to the cytoplasm by Exportin-5.

In the cytoplasm, the whole pri-miRNA is recruited by a RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC) and is converted into mature miRNA. These are mediated by an RISC leaching complex (RLS), which is basically a multiprotein complex and consists of a double-stranded RNA domain protein (DICER), tar RNA-binding protein (TARB), and the Ago 2 protein. The RNAse 3 DICER along with its cofactor yields duplex miRNA (19–25 nucleotide duplex miRNA with 2 nucleotide overhangs at each 3’end). During the process of cleavage, two strands are formed, namely, a functional and a passenger strand. The functional strand along with the Ago protein (RISC) is involved in gene silencing function, while the passenger strand is degraded due to its instability. This miRISC incorporates one strand of miRNA (functional strand and guide strand) so that it takes the guidance from this complex to target mRNA (complementary) for its degradation or inhibition at the translational level [22]. miRNA is processed in the cytosol and transported to the blood. It is resistant to degradation because it is carried by complexes of lipoprotein inclusions [23] or in the form of exosomes [24, 25].

3. Mechanism of action

The mechanism of action of microRNA is such that it binds to its partial complementary sequence in the target mRNA (that codes for protein). Hence, the expression is repressed (Figure 2) and no product is synthesized [7].

In another scenario, the microRNA may bind to the complementary sequence of target mRNA that codes for protein and initiates RNA-mediated gene silencing, with the resultant cleavage of the target RNA (Figure 3) [26].
2. Synthesis/biogenesis of miRNA

Synthesis of miRNA takes place in the nucleus as well as in the cytoplasm. Genes encoding miRNAs are present in the form of a cluster and contain introns (Figure 1). These genes are transcribed by polymerase II with the generation of the primary precursor pri-miRNA. This precursor miRNA consists of a 3\(^{0}\) poly-A tail and a 5\(^{0}\) end cap [19, 20] with a stem-loop structure. RNase 3 Drosha cleaves this structure with the help of its Pasha cofactor DGCR8. This resultant cleaved, pre-precursor structure is known as pre-miRNA and consists of \(\sim 70\) – 90 nucleotides [21]. This \(\sim 70\) nt precursor is exported to the cytoplasm by Exportin-5. In the cytoplasm, the whole pri-miRNA is recruited by a RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC) and is converted into mature miRNA. These are mediated by an RISC leaching complex (RLS), which is basically a multiprotein complex and consists of a double-stranded RNA domain protein (DICER), tar RNA-binding protein (TARB), and the Ago 2 protein. The RNAse 3 DICER along with its cofactor yields duplex miRNA (19 – 25 nucleotide duplex miRNA with 2 nucleotide overhangs at each 3\(^{0}\) end). During the process of cleavage, two strands are formed, namely, a functional and a passenger strand. The functional strand along with the Ago protein (RISC) is involved in gene silencing function, while the passenger strand is degraded due to its instability. This miRISC incorporates one strand of miRNA (functional strand and guide strand) so that it takes the guidance from this complex to target mRNA (complementary) for its degradation or inhibition at the translational level [22]. miRNA is processed in the cytosol and transported to the blood. It is resistant to degradation because it is carried by complexes of lipoprotein inclusions [23] or in the form of exosomes [24, 25].

3. Mechanism of action

The mechanism of action of microRNA is such that it binds to its partial complementary sequence in the target mRNA (that codes for protein). Hence, the expression is repressed (Figure 2) and no product is synthesized [7]. In another scenario, the microRNA may bind to the complementary sequence of target mRNA that codes for protein and initiates RNA-mediated gene silencing, with the resultant cleavage of the target RNA (Figure 3) [26].

4. Diagnosis of cancer

There are reported differences in the expression pattern of miRNA in normal and cancer cells [27]. Some miRNAs are overexpressed, while the others are downregulated in different kinds of cancers [28]. Due to its small size and resistance to RNase-mediated degradation, they have the potential as powerful biomarkers for cancer diagnosis [29]. miRNA expression is involved with the rearrangement of chromosomes, methylation of the promoter region, and transcriptional regulation. miRNA-mediated aberrations in one or more of these processes can culminate in alterations in protein and mRNA expression [30].

5. Types of miRNA and cancer according to organs

Different miRNAs are involved in different types of cancers:

5.1 Breast cancer

Breast cancer is the most prevalent form of cancer in women. Among 12.7 million cancer cases globally, breast cancer is most frequently diagnosed, that is, 23 and 14% deaths due to breast cancer have been reported [1, 31]. The alarmingly increasing mortality data coupled with increases in relapses warrants an improved molecular understanding of the etiology and mechanistic details that contribute to the chemoresistance. There are four subtypes (intrinsic) of breast cancer. These are ErbB2’ (epidermal growth factor receptor 2-positive (also called HER2)), luminal A
MicroRNAs upregulating the breast cancer.

Table 1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-10b</td>
<td>Homeobox D10</td>
<td>Promotes cellular invasion, migration, and metastasis by targeting the RhoC</td>
<td>[32]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-21</td>
<td>Programmed cell death protein 4, hypoxia-inducible factor-1α</td>
<td>Promotes cellular invasion, metastasis, epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition and migration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Phosphatase and tensin homolog, programmed cell death protein 4, tropomyosin 1</td>
<td>Promotes cellular invasion</td>
<td>[33]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Metalloproteinase inhibitor 3</td>
<td>Promotes cellular invasion</td>
<td>[34]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>miR-155</td>
<td>Suppressor of cytokine signaling 1</td>
<td>Promotes cell proliferation and growth</td>
<td>[35]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(chemosensitive determinant by targeting the FOXO3)</td>
<td>Tumor protein p53 inducible nuclear protein</td>
<td>Promotes cell proliferation</td>
<td>[36]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Forkhead box protein O3</td>
<td>Promotes cell proliferation and cell survival</td>
<td>[37, 38]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>miR-373</td>
<td>CD44 (inversely correlated)</td>
<td>Promotes cellular invasion and migration</td>
<td>[39]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>miR-520c</td>
<td></td>
<td>Promotes cellular migration and metastasis</td>
<td>[39]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Meta-analysis or Cochrane reviews documenting the involvement of a specific miRNA or a battery of miRNAs contributing to relapse or recurrence can be displayed as a separate table for each of the cancers.

Table 1.

MicroRNAs upregulating the breast cancer.
and the population of cells in the S phase is decreased. Apart from the G0/G1 cell cycle arrest, miR-320a also increases the activity of caspase resulting in the induction of apoptosis [59]. The potential target of miR-20 is Rab11a; it has two binding sites at the 3’UTR region for miR-320a and can mediate its posttranscriptional repression. This protein is also necessary for the activation of Akt via phosphatidylinositol-4-kinase (PI4K3) in breast cancer—a pro-survival signal [60]. Further, overexpression of Rab11a protein results in the reversal of cell cycle arrest and apoptosis mediated by miR-320a by targeting the MTDH at 3’UTR [61]. The gene coding for the Rab coupling protein (RCP) (a Rab11-FIP1C (Rab coupling protein))
is amplified in breast cancer and aids in the sorting of epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) [62, 63]. For the metastasis or migration of cancer, the cell critical factor is RCP which mediates this effect via cell surface integrin alpha-5-beta-1 demonstrating that Rab11a is a protein that is involved in the metastatic or invasive phenotype of breast cancer [64, 65].

5.2 Colorectal cancer

Colorectal cancer is the third most common cancer around the world. The incidence rate is increased up to 6% [66]. Survival rate can increase to 90%, if it is diagnosed at an early stage. Survival rate is inversely proportional to the stage of cancer [67].

In a study, the cluster of miR-17/miR-92 (chromosomal region 13q31.1 with miR-20a as one of its members). The region encompassing this cluster is under the regulation of the oncogenic Myc transcriptional factor and TGF-β [68, 69]. Overexpression converts a benign tumor to colorectal cancer [70].

Mir-20 acts as a potential benign tumor to colorectal cancer [71]. Induction of miR-20-mediated EMT is a critical factor contributing to the increases in tumor cell migration, metastasis, E-cadherin downregulation, and upregulation of matrix metalloproteinases (Figure 5) [72, 73]. This microRNA can cause a delay in TGF-β-mediated G1/S transition. However, cell cycle progression occurs due to an inactivating mutation in this pathway [74]. Normal TGF-β-mediated signaling can be a cytostatic response and inhibit tumorigenicity in colorectal cancer cells [75].

Figure 4.
MicroRNA and breast cancer.

Figure 5.
MicroRNA and colorectal cancer.
miR-20 may be degraded by a bacterial strain that is dominant in the lumen of the bowel of colorectal patients. Hence, expression of miR-20a is reduced in patients having colorectal adenoma [76–78].

In another study, miR-34a modulates EMT and MET processes. There is methylation in CpG islands (cancer specific), and these are repressed by IL-6/STAT3 pathway which is mediated by interleukin-6 receptors (IL6R) and inactivation of TP53. This results in downregulation of miR-34a [79]. miR-34a inhibits SIRT and activates TP53. A positive feedback loop has been suggested between miR-34a (Table 3) and TP53 [81]. In many cancers, TP53-inducible microRNA is miR-34a [82].

In another study, miR-200 is downregulated in primary colorectal cancer (invasive stage) correlatable with the disruption of the basement membrane [83]. The miR-200 family consists of five members and is encoded in two clusters. One cluster is present on chromosome 1 and encodes for miR-200a, miR-200b, miR-200c, and miR-141. The other cluster is present on chromosome 12 and encodes for miR-141. The potential target of miR-200 family is ZEB1/ZEB2 which is a repressor of CDH1 (Table 4). Expression of all members of this family can be repressed following methylation of CpG islands in the regulatory region of their genes [84, 85]. Strong expression of miR-200 results in metastatic colorectal cancer [83]. Another study shows that miR-155 and miR-21 are overexpressed in colorectal cancer [86]. In another study involving colorectal cancer patients, the expression of miR-195 and miR-497 is reduced [87].

5.3 Cervical cancer

Cervical cancer is the most common cause of death among women in the developing countries [88, 89]. Cervical cancer can cause the death of 270,000 women per year [90]. Human papillomavirus (HPV) is the causative agent, with the E6 and E7 proteins targeting p53 and pRb, respectively [91].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential target</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-185</td>
<td>Ras homolog gene family, member A, and cell division control protein 42 homolog</td>
<td>Reduction in the proliferation, induction of cell cycle arrest at the G1 stage, and promotion of apoptosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-192</td>
<td>Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 1</td>
<td>Regulating the p53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>miR-215</td>
<td>Tumor suppressor p53</td>
<td>Modulate the EMT transition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3. MicroRNAs suppressing the colorectal cancer [80].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential target</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-130a</td>
<td>Mothers against decapentaplegic homolog 4 (SMAD4)</td>
<td>Enhances the cell proliferation and migration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-301a</td>
<td>Zinc finger E-box-binding homeobox Ħ</td>
<td>Promotes metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4. MicroRNAs promoting the colorectal cancer [80].
growth (with a decrease in cyclin D1 level and cell cycle is arrested [95, 96]. So, when miR-FOXO1 protein is expressed, then there is an increase in the p27 and p21 expression protein. When FOXO1 protein is downregulated, cervical cancer is promoted. When the G1 phase of the cell cycle [72, 73].


Table 5.
AmiRNA involved in cervical cancer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-196a</td>
<td>Binds to the 3′ UTR of mRNA of p27Kip and FOXO1</td>
<td>Inhibit the proliferation of cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-10a</td>
<td>Has an inverse relation with the RAS pathway</td>
<td>Inhibit the proliferation of cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>miR-21</td>
<td>Negatively regulates p53 and Cdc25 (regulators of the expression of genes), TPM1 and RECK, and PTEN and PDCD4 (inducing the apoptosis of metastasized cell)</td>
<td>Inhibit the growth of cell via downregulation of its FOXM1 target</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>miR-886-5p</td>
<td>Negatively regulates Bax gene</td>
<td>Inhibit proliferation of cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>miR-143</td>
<td>Target k-Ras, Bcl-2 and Macc1, specifically in apoptosis (miR-10a, miR-106b, miR-21, miR-135b, miR-141, miR146, miR-148a, miR-214, and miR-21)</td>
<td>Inhibit cell growth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Several miRNAs are upregulated and downregulated during cervical cancer (Table 5). miR-135b is a biomarker for cervical cancer. Suppression of this biomarker results in the inhibition of cell growth.

Downregulation of miR-135b results in the percentage of G1 cells with a concomitant decrease in those in the S phase. The expression of cyclin-dependent kinases (p27 and p21) is increased and that of cyclin D1 is decreased. Cyclin D1 (nuclear protein) is responsible for the regulation of cells (proliferating) that are at the G1 phase of the cell cycle [72, 73].

There seems to be an inverse relationship between miR-135b and FOXO1 protein. When FOXO1 protein is downregulated, cervical cancer is promoted. When FOXO1 protein is expressed, then there is an increase in the p27 and p21 expression with a decrease in cyclin D1 level and cell cycle is arrested [95, 96]. So, when miR-135 is downregulated, FOXO1 is upregulated with the resultant inhibition of cell growth (Figure 6).

In cervical cancer, miR-196a is upregulated and its targets are p27Kip and FOXO1. It promotes the transition of cells from G1 phase to S phase, enhances the cellular proliferation by involving the PI3K/Akt pathway, and is involved in tumorigenesis [97].

In one study, miR-10a is overexpressed in cervical cancer (Long et al., 2012; [28]). The target of miR-10a is transmembrane protein type 1 close homolog of L1 (CHL1) that is downregulated. A decrease in CHL1 protein dysregulates PAK and MAPK pathways resulting in increases in cell growth followed by migration and invasion [98].

In another study, miR-21 is upregulated in cervical cancer, and it is located at the 17q23.21 locus (Table 6). The pri-miR-21 is transcribed by the intronic region of TMEM49 (protein-coding gene). This miRNA targets the p53 and Cdc25 (regulators of the expression of genes), TPM1 and RECK (suppressing the metastasis), and PTEN and PDCD4 (inducing the apoptosis of metastasized cell). Hence, decreases in this miRNA can result in the PDCD4 gene providing signals for the activation of the RAS pathway. This activation, in turn, activates the transcription factor AP-
growth (135 is downregulated, FOXO1 is upregulated with the resultant inhibition of cell
with a decrease in cyclin D1 level and cell cycle is arrested [95, 96]. So, when miR-
FOXO1 protein is expressed, then there is an increase in the p27 and p21 expression
in the G1 phase of the cell cycle [72, 73].

(nuclear protein) is responsible for the regulation of cells (proliferating) that are at
kinases (p27 and p21) is increased and that of cyclin D1 is decreased. Cyclin D1
comitant decrease in those in the S phase. The expression of cyclin-dependent
marker results in the inhibition of cell growth.

In cervical cancer, miR-196a is upregulated and its targets are p27Kip and
There seems to be an inverse relationship between miR-135b and FOXO1 pro-
Downregulation of miR-135b results in the percentage of G1 cells with a con-

Several miRNAs are upregulated and downregulated during cervical cancer

miR-10a is overexpressed in cervical cancer (Long et al., 2012; [28]). The target of miR-10a is transmembrane protein type 1 close homolog of L1

miR-21 is upregulated in cervical cancer, and it is located at the

In another study, miR-21 is upregulated in cervical cancer, and it is located at the

In one study, miR-10a is overexpressed in cervical cancer (Long et al., 2012;

1gene. This AP-1 binds to a specific site on the promoter of miR-21 and as a result
miR-21 gene is transcribed [99], thereby providing a plausible mechanism for a
positive feedback loop.

It was reported that miR-886-5p targets and negatively regulates Bax gene
expression via inhibition of translation, and hence, this form of control may be
significant for the development of cervical cancer. When there is a death signal, the
proapoptotic protein coded by Bax gene is inserted into the outer membrane of
mitochondria. As a result, cytochrome C is released, and the initiator caspase-9 is
subsequently activated with the initiation of apoptosis (Table 7) [91].

5.4 Liver cancer

Liver cancer is rising very rapidly globally with aflatoxins also contributing to its
etiology. Specific miRNA may be expressed in the case of liver cancer. One of the

Table 6.
MicroRNAs activating the cervical cancer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-196a</td>
<td>Binds to the 3’UTR of p27Kip and FOXO1 and inhibits their translation</td>
<td>Increases in cell proliferation and tumorigenesis</td>
<td>[97]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-10a</td>
<td>Has an inverse relation with the expression of close homolog of L1 (CHL1) transmembrane protein type 1—a cell-adhesion protein</td>
<td>Cell growth followed by migration and invasion</td>
<td>[91]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>miR-21</td>
<td>Negatively regulates p53 and Cdc25, TP53 and PCDH, and PTEN and PDCD4</td>
<td>Enhances the expression of genes associated with cell proliferation, metastasis, as well as those involved in the antiapoptosis effect</td>
<td>[91]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>miR-886-5p</td>
<td>Negatively regulates the Bax gene</td>
<td>Dysregulation of the gene involved in apoptosis (miR-10a, miR-106b, miR-21, miR-135b, miR-141, miR146, miR-148a, miR-214, and miR-886-5p)</td>
<td>[91]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>miR-20a</td>
<td>TNKS2 oncogene is upregulated (by binding at 3’UTR of mRNA of TNKS2 results in enhanced translation)</td>
<td>Migration, colony formation, and invasion</td>
<td>[91]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7.
MicroRNAs suppressing cervical cancer [91].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential target</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-143</td>
<td>Target k-Ras, Bcl-2 and Macc1, specifically downregulation of Bcl-2</td>
<td>Inhibition of apoptosis and uncontrolled cell proliferation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-129-5p</td>
<td>Downregulates HPV18 E5 and E7 expression as well as inhibits the translation of SP-1 transcriptional factor</td>
<td>Suppressing the progression of cervical cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>miR-34a</td>
<td>Cyclin E2 and D1, CDK6, E2F3, CDK4, E2F1, E2F5, P18, Bcl-2, and SIRT1</td>
<td>Aberrations in cell proliferation and differentiation—cell transformation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
miRNA biomarkers in liver cancer is miR-26a. Its expression is reduced in liver cancer unlike normal hepatic cells, where its expression level is increased [100].

miR-26a and miR-34a cause an increased number of cells in the G1 phase of the cell cycle, while there is a decrease in the cells in the S phase of the cell cycle. miR-26 causes cell cycle arrest at the G1 phase [84]. In the 3’UTR region of cyclins E2 and D2, there is a conserved binding site for miR-26a. miR-26a binds to these binding sites and represses the expression of both cyclins (Figure 7). miR-26 causes the induction of apoptosis in the tumor cells and suppresses hepatic cancer [101].

Kim et al. studied the expression of miR-31 in liver cancer (Table 8). The main target of miR-31 is CDK2 protein and HDAC2, with these proteins suppressed in the livers of normal individuals. There is an enhanced expression of CDK2 protein and HDAC2 in liver cancer. When HDAC2 is suppressed, p21WAF1/Cip1 and p16INK4A are activated, and positive regulators of the cell cycle (cyclin D1, CDK2, and CDK4) are suppressed simultaneously [102].

In another study, the expression of miR-9 enhances the formation of tumor spheres in the liver. The direct target of the miR-9 is PPARA and CDH1 genes and regulates them via binding to the 3’UTR region of these genes. Upregulation of miR-9 enhances the level of vimentin (mesenchymal marker) and deregulates the CDH1 (Table 9). The transcriptional factor PPARA has been implicated in the metabolic homeostasis of the liver by regulating the nuclear factor-4 alpha (hepatocyte HNF4A) gene, which is a tumor suppressor. In liver cancer, miR-9 suppresses the CDH1 and also suppresses the PPARA at their mRNA level by binding to the 3’UTR of these genes [103].

In a study involving prostate cancer, miR-888 was found to be upregulated. Its target is the tumor suppressors SMAD4 and RBL1. Binding of this miRNA to the 3’UTR causes their downregulation. RBL1 is the member of the RB (retinoblastoma) family and blocks the progression of cells at the G1-S phase following its binding and inhibition of the transcription factor E2F. SMAD4 protein binds to SMAD receptors and transduces the signal initiated by TGF-β/BMP ligands in order to regulate differentiation and cell growth [113].

In another study, there is the downregulation of miR-23a, b (Table 10). There is upregulation of the-Myc gene which causes the repression of these miRNAs at the transcriptional level. Mitochondrial glutaminase protein is expressed in the prostate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-26a</td>
<td>Cyclin E2 and D2</td>
<td>The arrest of the cell cycle at G1 phase</td>
<td>[84]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-31</td>
<td>CDK2 protein and HDAC2</td>
<td>Suppress the positive regulators of cell cycle and promote those proteins involved in EMT-related processes</td>
<td>[102]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8. MicroRNAs suppressing the liver cancer.
miRNA biomarkers in liver cancer is miR-26a. Its expression is reduced in liver cancer unlike normal hepatic cells, where its expression level is increased [100]. miR-26a and miR-34a cause an increased number of cells in the G1 phase of the cell cycle, while there is a decrease in the cells in the S phase of the cell cycle. miR-26 causes cell cycle arrest at the G1 phase [84]. In the 3' UTR region of cyclins E2 and D2, there is a conserved binding site for miR-26a. miR-26a binds to these binding sites and represses the expression of both cyclins (Figure 7). miR-26 causes the induction of apoptosis in the tumor cells and suppresses hepatic cancer [101].

Kim et al. studied the expression of miR-31 in liver cancer (Table 8). The main target of miR-31 is CDK2 protein and HDAC2, with these proteins suppressed in the livers of normal individuals. There is an enhanced expression of CDK2 protein and HDAC2 in liver cancer. When HDAC2 is suppressed, p21WAF1/Cip1 and p16INK4A are activated, and positive regulators of the cell cycle (cyclin D1, CDK2, and CDK4) are suppressed simultaneously [102].

In another study, the expression of miR-9 enhances the formation of tumor spheres in the liver. The direct target of the miR-9 is PPARA and CDH1 genes and regulates them via binding to the 3' UTR region of these genes. Upregulation of miR-9 enhances the level of vimentin (mesenchymal marker) and deregulates the CDH1 (Table 9). The transcriptional factor PPARA has been implicated in the metabolic homeostasis of the liver by regulating the nuclear factor-4 alpha (hepatocyte HNF4A) gene, which is a tumor suppressor. In liver cancer, miR-9 suppresses the CDH1 and also suppresses the PPARA at their mRNA level by binding to the 3' UTR of these genes [103].

In one study, there is overexpression of miR-525-3p in liver cancer, and its potential target is a zinc finger protein (Krüppel C2H2 type family) ZNF395. This zinc finger protein was originally a transcriptional factor and binds to the promoter region of the human papillomavirus (HPV). This protein mediates the regulation of PI3K/Akt pathway and causes the inhibition of cell growth via the induction of caspase-3 and the promotion of apoptosis. The expression of miR-525-3p enhances cell growth and prevent apoptosis [104].

Table 9. MicroRNAs activating the liver cancer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-9</td>
<td>Influences the PPARA/CDH1 pathway</td>
<td>Suppress the tumor suppressor</td>
<td>[103]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-525-3p</td>
<td>Downregulates ZNF395</td>
<td>Enhances cell growth and prevent apoptosis</td>
<td>[104]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.5 Prostate cancer

In countries in the West, prostate cancer is a more prevalent form of cancer among males with an increasing incidence rate [105]. Prostate cancer is the result of undesirable genomic alteration [106, 107]. CD9 is inactivated during prostate cancer and may cause its progression [108].

In the prostate cancer, serum level of miR-141 is elevated [109]. So it acts as the biomarker of prostate cancer. In the progression or repression of prostate cancer, miR-141 function is understood poorly [110]. One other study is done by Waltering et al. in which miR-141 is castrated and results in upregulation and activation (Figure 8). This causes the LNCaP cell growth to increase. This miRNA is also involved in the regulation of signaling of the androgen. This androgen has a crucial role in the growth of prostate cancer (castration-resistant and androgen-dependent). So it may be involved in the progression of prostate cancer [111, 112].

In a study involving prostate cancer, miR-888 was found to be upregulated. Its target is the tumor suppressors SMAD4 and RBL1. Binding of this miRNA to the 3' UTR causes their downregulation. RBL1 is the member of the RB (retinoblastoma) family and blocks the progression of cells at the G1-S phase following its binding and inhibition of the transcription factor E2F. SMAD4 protein binds to SMAD receptors and transduces the signal initiated by TGF-β/BMP ligands in order to regulate differentiation and cell growth [113].

In another study, there is the downregulation of miR-23a, b (Table 10). There is upregulation of the-Myc gene which causes the repression of these miRNAs at the transcriptional level. Mitochondrial glutaminase protein is expressed in the prostate.

Table 10. MicroRNAs suppressing the liver cancer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-9</td>
<td>Influences the PPARA/CDH1 pathway</td>
<td>Suppress the tumor suppressor</td>
<td>[103]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-525-3p</td>
<td>Downregulates ZNF395</td>
<td>Enhances cell growth and prevent apoptosis</td>
<td>[104]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 8. miRNA and prostate cancer.
cancer cells. Consequently, glutamine catabolism is increased, providing a growth advantage to the cancer cells [114].

In another study, miR-34a is suppressed in prostate cancer. The target of miR-34a is deacetylase sirtuin (SIRT1) and cyclin-dependent kinase 6 (CDK6). CDK6 regulates cyclin D, which, in turn, regulates cell cycle progression and G1-S phase transition, while p53 protein-dependent apoptosis is regulated by SIRT1 via deacetylation and stabilization of p53. The target of the p53 gene is miR-34a. It is suggested that there is a positive feedback loop in which SIRT1 mediates the activation of miR-34a via stabilization of p53 and induces the apoptosis and blocks the cell cycle transition. This activation of p53 causes the upregulation of miR-34a which in turn suppresses the SIRT1 (Table 11) [114].

5.6 Lung cancer

The leading cause of death around the world is lung cancer by tobacco smoke. This environmental lifestyle-related factor may cause undesirable epigenetic and genetic modifications [115]. The key role in lung cancer is the alteration and mutation in tumor suppressor genes (p53 and RB/p16 pathway) and less frequent is the genetic alteration of FHIT, K-ras, MYO18B, and PTEN [116]. Five miRNAs were differentially expressed in lung cancer tissues, and these include miR-21, miR-155, miR-145, miR-17-3p, and hsa-let-7a-2. Specifically, hsa-miR-155 levels were increased, while that of hsa-let-7a-2 was downregulated [117].

There is a functional interaction of let-7 with the Ras as a target gene is overexpressed associated with protein kinase and resulting intracellular pathway of signaling [118]. The molecular mechanism is unclear involving miRNA in lung cancer. Alteration in the somatic genes resulted in the defective miRNA expression in lung cancer. This reduced expression of miRNA (has-let-7a-2) in the lung cancer is due to epigenetic modification and results in the silencing of tumor suppressor gene and many others (Figure 9) [119, 120]. The expression of hsa-miR-21 is upregulated in cancer cell and causes the inhibition of product of gene which initiates apoptosis and causes lung cancer [121]. In a report miR-17~92 cluster is overexpressed in the lung cancer. This cluster consists of six miRNAs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-141</td>
<td>LNCaP cells</td>
<td>Promote cell growth Decreased growth in response to anti-miR-141 treatment</td>
<td>[112]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-888</td>
<td>Downregulates SMAD4 and RBL1</td>
<td>G1-S phase transition</td>
<td>[113]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10. MicroRNAs activating the prostate cancer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-23a,b</td>
<td>Glutaminase protein (indirect)</td>
<td>Glutamine catabolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-34a</td>
<td>SIRT1 and CDK6</td>
<td>Progression of cell cycle, G1-S phase transition, and antiapoptosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11. MicroRNAs suppressing the prostate cancer [114].
Consequently, glutamine catabolism is increased, providing a growth advantage to the cancer cells [114]. In another study, miR-34a is suppressed in prostate cancer. The target of miR-34a is deacetylase sirtuin (SIRT1) and cyclin-dependent kinase 6 (CDK6). CDK6 regulates cyclin D, which, in turn, regulates cell cycle progression and G1-S phase transition, while p53 protein-dependent apoptosis is regulated by SIRT1 via deacetylation and stabilization of p53. The target of the p53 gene is miR-34a. It is suggested that there is a positive feedback loop in which SIRT1 mediates the activation of miR-34a via stabilization of p53 and induces the apoptosis and blocks the cell cycle transition. This activation of p53 causes the upregulation of miR-34a which in turn suppresses the SIRT1 (Table 11) [114].

5.6 Lung cancer

The leading cause of death around the world is lung cancer by tobacco smoke. This environmental lifestyle-related factor may cause undesirable epigenetic and genetic modifications [115]. The key role in lung cancer is the alteration and mutation in tumor suppressor genes (p53 and RB/p16 pathway) and less frequent is the genetic alteration of FHIT, K-ras, MYO18B, and PTEN [116]. Five miRNAs were differentially expressed in lung cancer tissues, and these include miR-21, miR-155, miR-145, miR-17-3p, and hsa-let-7a-2. Specifically, hsa-miR-155 levels were increased, while that of hsa-let-7a-2 was downregulated [117]. There is a functional interaction of let-7 with the Ras as a target gene is overexpressed associated with protein kinase and resulting intracellular pathway of signaling [118]. The molecular mechanism is unclear involving miRNA in lung cancer. Alteration in the somatic genes resulted in the defective miRNA expression in lung cancer. This reduced expression of miRNA (has-let-7a-2) in the lung cancer is due to epigenetic modification and results in the silencing of tumor suppressor gene and many others (Figure 9) [119, 120]. The expression of hsa-miR-21 is upregulated in cancer cell and causes the inhibition of product of gene which initiates apoptosis and causes lung cancer [121]. In a report miR-17/C24 cluster is overexpressed in the lung cancer. This cluster consists of six miRNAs.

This cluster in lung cancer is transactivated via MYC and members of the E2F family. The direct target of this cluster is HIF-1α. Upregulation of MYC causes the downregulation of HIF-1α and affects proliferation of cell in normoxia without affecting the hypoxic condition. Overexpression of this cluster causes knockdown of retinoblastoma gene and results in the formation of reactive oxygen species. Another direct target of this cluster is RAS-related protein 14 (RAB-14), and it is downregulated by this cluster and results in the initiation and development of cancer [122].

In another study, miR-21 is upregulated in the lung cancer. Its direct target is tumor suppressor gene PTEN that is repressed by overexpression of miR-21 (Table 12), which results in cell growth enhancement and non-small cell lung carcinoma invasion [123]. miR-21 is upregulated by RAS via PI3K and RAF/MAPK pathways [122].

In another study, miR-34 is downregulated in the lung cancer. This miRNA is directly regulated by p53 and regulates the apoptosis and arrest of the cell cycle in cancer [81].

The miR-34/miR-499 is downregulated in lung cancer and its direct target is E2F and p53 (Table 13). Both miRNAs suppress the E2F and upregulate the p53 via SIRT1 so cell growth is increased [124].

The miR-15/miR-16 is downregulated in lung cancer. There is upregulation of cyclin D1 with the downregulation of miR-15/miR-16. The overexpression of miR-15/miR-16 causes the arrest of the cell cycle at G1 phase [122].
5.7 Gastric cancer

The second malignancy that is widely prevailed is the gastric cancer which results in 12% deaths around the world [125]. Gastric cancer is the result of a series of steps. When transforming growth factor (TGF-beta) resistance is developed and E2F1 is upregulated, then gastric cancer is developed [126, 127].

In gastric cancer, there is upregulation of cluster of miR-106b-25 present on Mcm gene [128]. It ensures that DNA is replicated only one time when replication fork is assembled on the DNA during each cycle [129]. When cells exit from the mitosis, then expression of cluster of miR-106b-25 is activated by E2F1 (Figure 10) and gains the reentry in the G1 phase of the cell cycle. The cell cycle inhibitor is p21 [130].

The cytokine TGF-beta causes the cell cycle arrests by activating p21 and causes the apoptosis [131]. As this cytokine is activated it causes the downregulation of miR-106b-25 cluster, reduces the expression of E2F1, causes the cell cycle arrest at G1/S phase of cell cycle, and causes the induction of apoptosis. The key target of miR-93 and miR-106b is E2F1 [132]. The key target of miR-25, the biomarker of gastric cancer, is TGF-beta cytokine [133]. The target of cytokine in mediating the apoptosis is Bim protein that in turn causes the activation of proapoptotic Bax and Bad molecules acting as an antagonist of Bcl2 and BclXL antiapoptotic factors (Figure 11) [134].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>let-7</td>
<td>Ras</td>
<td>Protein kinase-associated signaling pathway</td>
<td>[118]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-17~92</td>
<td>HIF-1α and RAB14</td>
<td>ROS and initiation and development of cancer</td>
<td>[122]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>miR-21</td>
<td>PTEN</td>
<td>Cell growth enhancement and invasion</td>
<td>[122]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 12. MicroRNAs activating the lung cancer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-34</td>
<td>p53</td>
<td>Regulate the apoptosis and arrest of cell cycle</td>
<td>[81]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-34/miR-499</td>
<td>E2F and p53</td>
<td>Cell growth and proliferation</td>
<td>[124]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>miR-15/miR-16</td>
<td>Cyclin D1</td>
<td>The arrest of the cell cycle at the G1 phase</td>
<td>[122]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 13. MicroRNAs suppressing the lung cancer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-375</td>
<td>PDK1 and JAK2</td>
<td>Decrease the cell viability</td>
<td>[136, 137]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-135a</td>
<td>E2F</td>
<td>Suppress cell proliferation, metastasis, and EMT</td>
<td>[138]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.7 Gastric cancer

Current Cancer Treatment

DOI: http:/ /dx.doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.90063
Gastric cancer

The second malignancy that is widely prevailed is the gastric cancer which results in 12% deaths around the world [125]. Gastric cancer is the result of a series of steps. When transforming growth factor (TGF-beta) resistance is developed and E2F1 is upregulated, then gastric cancer is developed [126, 127].

In gastric cancer, there is upregulation of cluster of miR-106b-25 present on Mcm gene [128]. The transition of the G1/S phase of the cell cycle is targeted by Mcm gene. It ensures that DNA is replicated only one time when replication fork is assembled on the DNA during each cycle [129]. When cells exit from the mitosis, then expression of cluster of miR-106b-25 is activated by E2F1 (Figure 10) and gains the reentry in the G1 phase of the cell cycle. The cell cycle inhibitor is p21 [130].

The cytokine TGF-beta causes the cell cycle arrests by activating p21 and causes the apoptosis [131]. As this cytokine is activated it causes the downregulation of miR-106b-25 cluster, reduces the expression of E2F1, causes the cell cycle arrest at G1/S phase of cell cycle, and causes the induction of apoptosis. The key target of miR-93 and miR-106b is E2F1 [132]. The key target of miR-25, the biomarker of gastric cancer, is TGF-beta cytokine [133]. The target of cytokine in mediating the apoptosis is Bim protein that in turn causes the activation of proapoptotic Bax and Bad molecules acting as an antagonist of Bcl2 and BclXL antiapoptotic factors (Figure 11) [134].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-106b-25</td>
<td>E2F1</td>
<td>Antiapoptosis and cell proliferation</td>
<td>[132]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-196b</td>
<td>HOXA10</td>
<td>Progenitor and hematopoietic stem cell proliferation</td>
<td>[135]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 14. MicroRNAs activating the gastric cancer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-375</td>
<td>PDK1 and JAK2</td>
<td>Decrease the cell viability</td>
<td>[136, 137]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-135a</td>
<td>E2F</td>
<td>Suppress cell proliferation, metastasis, and EMT</td>
<td>[138]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 15. MicroRNAs suppressing the gastric cancer.
5.8 Bladder cancer

In males, bladder cancer is an important malignancy present in two forms that are muscle invasive and non-muscle invasive (benign) [139]. There are two microRNAs associated with bladder cancer. They are miR-21 and miR-129 [140].

In the bladder cancer, miR-129 and miR-21 both are upregulated. The direct target of miR-21 is the tumor suppressor genes that are TPM1 and PTEN (Figure 12) [141, 142]. The known targets of miR-129 are the genes involved in the regulation of transcription and processing of miRNA that are TAMTA1 and EIF2CA [143]. The mir-129’s pathway of death effectors leads to the tumor as its target is also SOX4 [144].

According to one study, miR-19a is frequently upregulated in the bladder cancer. The expression of miR-19a is related to PTEN expression (Table 16). PTEN is a tumor suppressor gene. When miR-19a is overexpressed, it causes the downregulation of PTEN and increases the cell level of phosphatidylinositol-3,4,5-trisphosphate in AKT/PKB pathway. When growth factors are released, then the AKT pathway is initiated and cell growth is increased [145].

Zhang studied that miR-125b is downregulated in bladder cancer. The expression of miR-125b causes the inhibition of formation of colony and development of cancer via suppression of E2F3 which is overexpressed in bladder cancer [74].

In another study angiogenesis in the bladder cancer is suppressed by miR-34a (Table 17). The target of miR-34a is CD44 and causes the suppression of CD44 when upregulated which results in the regulation of transcription of the various genes in bladder cancer. Over expression of miR-34a causes the inhibition of invasion, metastasis, migration, tube formation, and angiogenesis [146].

5.9 Glioblastoma

Glioblastoma is the tumor of astrocytes, star-shaped cells that form the supportive tissues (glue-like) of the brain. This is readily metastasizing tumor because it is surrounded by large blood vessels. Glioblastoma is a complex and heterogeneous tumor that comprises one neoplastic cells, endothelial cells, stemlike cells, neural precursor cells, microglia, reactive extracellular components, and peripheral immune cells [147].

The biomarker in glioblastoma is miR-21 that is upregulated in this cancer (Figure 13). It mediates its effect in two ways: acting at the translational level and acting at the transcription level. It binds the 3' UTR region of the target gene (for apoptosis) [148] and causes the inhibition of transcription of apoptotic genes by decreasing the stability. It also resists the caspases 3 and 7 that are important apoptotic agents so apoptosis does not occur [149].

Upregulation of miR-221 and miR-222 was in glioma cells. These two miRNAs present as a cluster on Xp11.3 and have the same target. Functional studies revealed that there is an association of these two miRNAs with the progression of the cell cycle. Their direct target is cyclin-dependent kinase 1B/p27. The overexpression of these miRNAs cause the activation of quiescent glioblastoma cells and the progression of these cells from G1 phase to S phase of the cell cycle. miR-221/miR-222 also targets the p57 and p27 (inhibitors of cell-dependent kinase) to prevent the quiescence at G1 phase and cause their entry to S phase of the cell cycle. The miR-221/miR-222 also targets the PUMA, a proapoptotic protein, to prevent the apoptosis (Table 18) [150].

Another biomarker miR-128 is found to be downregulated in glioblastoma. The expression of miR-128 causes the regulation of proliferation of glioblastoma multiform (GBM) cells via targeting the PDGFR-α and EGFR, the oncogenic kinases

---

**Figure 12.**
*miRNA and bladder cancer.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-129</td>
<td>TAMTA1 and EIF2CA</td>
<td>Regulation of transcription</td>
<td>[143]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-21</td>
<td>TPM1 and PTEN</td>
<td>Growth of tumor cell</td>
<td>[141]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>miR-19a</td>
<td>PTEN</td>
<td>Increase in the cell growth</td>
<td>[145]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 16.*
*MicroRNAs activating the bladder cancer.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-125b</td>
<td>E2F3</td>
<td>Inhibition of formation of colony and development of cancer</td>
<td>[74]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-34a</td>
<td>CD44</td>
<td>Inhibition of invasion, metastasis, migration, tube formation, and angiogenesis</td>
<td>[146]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 17.*
*MicroRNAs suppressing the bladder cancer.*
genes in bladder cancer. Over expression of miR-34a causes the inhibition of invasion, metastasis, migration, tube formation, and angiogenesis by targeting the CD44 [146].

5.9 Glioblastoma

Glioblastoma is the tumor of astrocytes, star-shaped cells that form the supportive tissues (glue-like) of the brain. This is readily metastasizing tumor because it is surrounded by large blood vessels. Glioblastoma is a complex and heterogeneous tumor that comprises on neoplastic cells, endothelial cells, stemlike cells, neural precursor cells, microglia, reactive extracellular components, and peripheral immune cells [147].

The biomarker in glioblastoma is miR-21 that is upregulated in this cancer (Figure 13). It mediates its effect in two ways: acting at the translational level and acting at the transcription level. It binds the 3'UTR region of the target gene (for apoptosis) [148] and causes the inhibition of transcription of apoptotic genes by decreasing the stability. It also resists the caspases 3 and 7 that are important apoptotic agents so apoptosis does not occur [149].

Upregulation of miR-221 and miR-222 was in glioma cells. These two miRNAs present as a cluster on Xp11.3 and have the same target. Functional studies revealed that there is an association of these two miRNAs with the progression of the cell cycle. Their direct target is cyclin-dependent kinase 1B/p27. The overexpression of these miRNAs cause the activation of quiescent glioblastoma cells and the progression of these cells from G1 phase to S phase of the cell cycle. miR-221/miR-222 also targets the p57 and p27 (inhibitors of cell-dependent kinase) to prevent the quiescence at G1 phase and cause their entry to S phase of the cell cycle. The miR-221/miR-222 also targets the PUMA, a proapoptotic protein, to prevent the apoptosis (Table 18) [150].

Another biomarker miR-128 is found to be downregulated in glioblastoma. The expression of miR-128 causes the regulation of proliferation of glioblastoma multiform (GBM) cells via targeting the PDGFR-α and EGFR, the oncogenic kinases

![Figure 13. miRNA and glioblastoma.](image-url)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-21</td>
<td>Caspases 3 and 7</td>
<td>Antiapoptotic</td>
<td>[149]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-221/miR-222</td>
<td>Cyclin-dependent kinase 1B/p27</td>
<td>Prevent the apoptosis</td>
<td>[150]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 18. MicroRNAs activating the glioblastoma.
(receptor tyrosine kinases) (Table 19). It suppresses the GBM by enhancing the differentiation of neuronal cells. It also targets the signaling molecules in the PI3-kinase/AKT pathway which causes the tumor cell proliferation [147].

In other study miR-7 is downregulated in glioblastoma. Its target is EGFR and causes the inhibition of AKT pathways and EGFR and results in the reduction of cell viability of GBM via direct binding to mRNA of EGFR or via targeting to IRS1 and IRS2 (insulin receptor substrate). The major regulators EGFR and IRS are at upstream site of AKT pathway [151].

5.10 B cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia

This is the cancer of B lymphocytes (antibodies), and it is a prevalent form of leukemia in the adult around western countries [152].

In B cell leukemia, the expression of three microRNAs is seen as cancer biomarker. These are miR-15a, miR-16-1, and miR-19a (Figure 14). Two microRNAs are present at 13q14.3 chromosomal location; these are miR-15a and 16-1 [153]. The expression of these two is decreased in this leukemia, whereas the expression of miR-19a is increased [152]. The region encoding for miR-15a and miR-16-1 was deleted. This leads to the presence of the genes of IgVH that were mutated [154]. The potent target of miR-19a is PTEN, and there is down-expression of this PTEN gene; hence its protein is not properly synthesized because the promoter of the gene is hypermethylated [155].

The miR-16-1 and miR-15a (located on chromosome 13) are downregulated in B cell lymphocytic leukemia (Table 20). These microRNAs target the p53 gene which

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-128</td>
<td>PDGFR-α and EGFR</td>
<td>Enhancing the differentiation of neuronal cells</td>
<td>[147]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-7</td>
<td>EGFR</td>
<td>Reduction of cell viability</td>
<td>[151]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 19. MicroRNAs suppressing the glioblastoma.

![Figure 14. miRNA and B cell lymphocytic leukemia.](image1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-15a</td>
<td>p53</td>
<td>Prevent the apoptosis and cell survival is increased</td>
<td>[153]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-16-1</td>
<td>p53</td>
<td>Prevent the apoptosis and cell survival is increased</td>
<td>[156]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 20. MicroRNAs suppressing the B cell lymphocytic leukemia.
is a tumor suppressor gene. When these miRNAs are downregulated, then the expression of p53 is reduced or inhibited, and expression of BCL-2 is increased which prevent the apoptosis and cell survival is increased [156].

In one study, miR-17/miR-92 cluster is overexpressed in the B cell lymphocytic leukemia (Table 21). The direct target of this cluster is PTEN and Bim. The PTEN is a tumor suppressor gene, and Bim is proapoptotic protein. Overexpression of this cluster causes prevention of apoptosis and progression of tumor [157].

In other study, miR-155 is overexpressed in the B cell lymphocytic leukemia [159]. The potential target for miR-155 is SHIP1. Expression of miR-155 causes the alteration of BCR response in signaling pathway via the modulation of SHIP1 expression in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Scr homology-2 domain comprising the inositol 5-phosphatase is encoded by SHIP1. This phosphatase causes the inhibition of BCR signaling and surface immunoglobulin [158].

### 5.11 Pancreatic cancer

Pancreatic tumor is most of the time identified at the last stages when therapy does not save life. Li et al. characterize the pancreatic cancer stem cells (PCSCs) for the very first time [160].

In one study, there is overexpression of miR-1290 in pancreatic cancer. The direct target of miR-1290 is FoxA1 which has an effect on the transition of epithelial mesenchyma. The overexpression of miR-1290 results in the growth of cell and invasion [94].

In another study there is overexpression of miR-194 in pancreatic cancer. The target of miR-194 is DACH1 and results in the formation of the colony, the proliferation of cell, and migration (Table 22), so miR-194 causes the progression of the tumor [161].

The growth and differentiation of the cell are regulated by LIN28, a protein that binds to the RNA [162]. The protein that is encoded by LIN28 is 25 kDa and has two binding sites for RNA: cold shock domain (CSD) and a pair of zinc fingers. In pancreatic cancer, the expression of LIN28 is increased which in turn suppresses the biosynthesis of family let-7 of microRNA (Figure 15). This family targets the genes involved in the growth and differentiation regulation [163]. This LIN28 causes the inhibition by binging to the loop present at the terminal region of let-7 family, so

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-19a</td>
<td>PTEN</td>
<td>Cause the tumor</td>
<td>[155]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-17/miR-92</td>
<td>PTEN and Bim</td>
<td>Prevention of apoptosis and progression of tumor</td>
<td>[157]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>miR-155</td>
<td>SHIP1</td>
<td>Inhibition of BCR signaling and surface immunoglobulin</td>
<td>[158]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 21. MicroRNAs activating the B cell lymphocytic leukemia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>miR-1290</td>
<td>FoxA1</td>
<td>Cell growth and invasion</td>
<td>[94]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-194</td>
<td>DACH1</td>
<td>Progression of tumor</td>
<td>[161]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 22. MicroRNAs activating the pancreatic cancer.
their processing is blocked [45, 46, 164]. This family is involved in the regulation of tumor by cyclin D1 (CCND1) inhibition [165, 166].

In one study there is downregulation of miR-145 in pancreatic cancer. The decreased expression of miR-145 is due to activation of the K-ras gene. Expression of miR-145 causes the inhibition of expression of insulin growth factor-1 receptors (Table 23). Its expression causes the downregulation of genes related to cancer (SET, MCM2, SPTBN1). These genes cause growth and carcinogenesis of pancreatic cancer [161].

### 5.12 Acute myeloid leukemia

In the myeloid leukemia, malignant blast cells are synthesized in comparison to mononuclear cells of healthy bone marrow [167]. In myeloid leukemia the hypermethylation of the DNA is involved in tumor suppression [168]. In one study, there is overexpression of miR-204 in acute myeloid leukemia. The target of miR-204 is MEIS1 and HOXA 10 genes which disturbs the differentiation of myeloid cells. Its overexpression causes tumorigenesis [169].

In another study, miR-125b (located on chromosome 1) is overexpressed in acute myeloid leukemia. The target of miR-125b is BCL2-antagonist/killer 1 (Bak1) which enhance the proliferation of AML cell and prevent the apoptosis [169].

In another study, miR-155 (located on chromosome 21) is overexpressed in the acute myeloid leukemia. This miR-155 is located in B cell integration cluster (BIC) gene. This BIC correlated to MYC to initiate lymphomas. Overexpression of miR-155 causes the inhibition of WEE1, a regulator of the cell cycle, and hMLH1, hMLH6, and hMLH4, the genes for mismatch repair (Table 24). The result of this inhibition is increased in mutation rate in progenitor and hematopoietic stem cells [169].

The known biomarker for the acute myeloid leukemia is miR-29b [167]. miR-29b causes the hypomethylation of the DNA. Sp1 transcriptional factor has the binding site for both miR-29b and DNMT1. In DNMT, it binds to its promoter and 3’UTR for miR-29b of Sp1 (specificity protein 1). Binding to the 3’UTR causes the reduced expression of Sp1, so DNMT (DNA methyltransferase) expression is also

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. no.</th>
<th>MicroRNAs</th>
<th>Potential targets</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>let-7 family</td>
<td>cyclin D1 (CCND1)</td>
<td>Regulation of tumor</td>
<td>[166]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>miR-145</td>
<td>K-ras</td>
<td>Growth and carcinogenesis</td>
<td>[161]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 23. MicroRNAs suppressing the pancreatic cancer.
Their processing is blocked [45, 46, 164]. This family is involved in the regulation of tumor by cyclin D1 (CCND1) inhibition [165, 166].

In one study there is downregulation of miR-145 in pancreatic cancer. The decreased expression of miR-145 is due to activation of the K-ras gene. Expression of miR-145 causes the inhibition of expression of insulin growth factor-1 receptors (Table 23). Its expression causes the downregulation of genes related to cancer (SET, MCM2, SPTBN1). These genes cause growth and carcinogenesis of pancreatic cancer [161].

5.12 Acute myeloid leukemia

In the myeloid leukemia, malignant blast cells are synthesized in comparison to mononuclear cells of healthy bone marrow [167]. In myeloid leukemia the hypermethylation of the DNA is involved in tumor suppression [168]. In one study, there is overexpression of miR-204 in acute myeloid leukemia. The target of miR-204 is MEIS1 and HOXA 10 genes which disturbs the differentiation of myeloid cells. Its overexpression causes tumorigenesis [169].

In another study, miR-125b (located on chromosome 1) is overexpressed in acute myeloid leukemia. The target of miR-125b is BCL2-antagonist/killer 1 (Bak1) which enhance the proliferation of AML cell and prevent the apoptosis [169].

In another study, miR-155 (located on chromosome 21) is overexpressed in the acute myeloid leukemia. This miR-155 is located in B cell integration cluster (BIC) gene. This BIC correlated to MYC to initiate lymphomas. Overexpression of miR-155 causes the inhibition of WEE1, a regulator of the cell cycle, and hMLH1, hMLH6, and hMLH4, the genes for mismatch repair (Table 24). The result of this inhibition is increased in mutation rate in progenitor and hematopoietic stem cells [169].

The known biomarker for the acute myeloid leukemia is miR-29b [167]. miR-29b causes the hypomethylation of the DNA. Sp1 transcriptional factor has the binding site for both miR-29b and DNMT1. In DNMT, it binds to its promoter and 3′UTR for miR-29b of Sp1 (specificity protein 1). Binding to the 3′UTR causes the reduced expression of Sp1, so DNMT (DNA methyltransferase) expression is also reduced (Figure 16). In acute myeloid leukemia, miR-29b results in the apoptosis when it directly targets the MCL (induced myeloid leukemia cell differentiation protein) [170]. So the expression of miR-29b is reduced in acute myeloid leukemia which leads to cancer progression as apoptosis has been decreased with reduced expression of miR-29b (Table 25).

5.13 Ovarian cancer

In ovarian cancer, the biomarker that is used is miR-214 and it is upregulated in cancer. It binds to the 3′UTR region of phosphatase and tensin analog (PTEN) gene and causes its hypermethylation. So this is inactivated. The direct target of PTEN is Akt protein kinase B and mediates its activation by the help of PI4K3B [171]. Akt causes the downstream effects such as activation of glycogen synthase. So when PTEN is inhibited, it activates the expression of Akt. This miR-214 resists the cisplatin-mediated cell death, so it is antiapoptotic in nature (Figure 17). Cisplatin is an important factor in mediating cell death [172].

In a study, there is overexpression of Hsa-miR-182 in ovarian cancer. The potential target of Hsa-miR-182 is forkhead box 3 (FOXO3) and forkhead box 1 (FOXO1) which promote the differentiation and inhibition of growth (acting as a tumor suppressor). These tumor suppressor genes are suppressed, and growth and proliferation of ovarian cell are increased (Table 26) [173].
In another study, there is downregulation of miR-200 family in ovarian cancer. The direct target of miR-200 is zinc finger E-box-binding homeobox 1 and 2 (ZEB1 and ZEB2). It prevents the EMT, metastasis, invasion, and migration of tumor cell [174].

In another study there is downregulation of miR-506 in ovarian cancer, so there is cell migration invasion of the cancer cell. When this miRNA is overexpressed, it causes the expression of E-cadherin and results in inhibition of cell invasion and migration and proliferation of ovarian cancer and, via targeting SNAI2 (E-cadherin transcriptional factor), prevents the EMT induction by TGF-β (Table 27). The miR-506 directly targets the CDK4/CDK6-FOXM1 axis and initiates the senescence [175].

### 6. Conclusion

MicroRNAs (miRNAs) could be used as potential tool for early detection of cancer. It may upregulate or downregulate multiple targets through various mechanisms. It is upregulated as an oncogene (miRNA) and downregulated as a tumor suppressor. microRNA targets the PTEN, interferon (tumor suppressor genes), and
In another study, there is downregulation of miR-200 family in ovarian cancer. The direct target of miR-200 is zinc finger E-box-binding homeobox 1 and 2 (ZEB1 and ZEB2). It prevents the EMT, metastasis, invasion, and migration of tumor cell. Interleukin-8 and CXCL1 (released from tumor epithelial cells) are also the target of miR-200 and prevent the angiogenesis of tumor cell [174].

In another study there is downregulation of miR-506 in ovarian cancer, so there is cell migration invasion of the cancer cell. When this miRNA is overexpressed, it causes the expression of E-cadherin and results in inhibition of cell invasion and migration and proliferation of ovarian cancer and, via targeting SNAI2 (E-cadherin transcriptional factor), prevents the EMT induction by TGF-β (Table 27). The miR-506 directly targets the CDK4/CDK6-FOXM1 axis and initiates the senescence [175].

6. Conclusion

MicroRNAs (miRNAs) could be used as potential tool for early detection of cancer. It may upregulate or downregulate multiple targets through various mechanisms. It is upregulated as an oncogene (miRNA) and downregulated as a tumor suppressor. microRNA targets the PTEN, interferon (tumor suppressor genes), and also to the cell cycle along with the regulation of these genes [172]. MicroRNA is of vital importance because of its resistance to degradation and could be a potential candidate for clinical applications. However, its expression level can be screened in the serum/plasma (blood) by high-throughput sequencing technology. Further research for identification of novel microRNA will warrant the development of microRNA-related cancer prognosis [176–180].

Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>miRISC</td>
<td>microRNA-associated RNA-induced silencing complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DGCR8</td>
<td>DiGeorge syndrome chromosomal [or critical] region 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR</td>
<td>epidermal growth factor receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOXO1</td>
<td>forkhead box protein O1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTEN</td>
<td>phosphatase and tensin homolog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM1</td>
<td>tropomyosin alpha-1 chain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOX4</td>
<td>SRY-related HMG-box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCND1</td>
<td>cyclin-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNMT</td>
<td>DNA methyltransferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCL</td>
<td>induced myeloid leukemia cell differentiation protein Mcl-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKB</td>
<td>Akt (protein kinase B)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Author details

Ayesha Siddiqua1, Sumaira Kousar1,2*, Amer Jamil1, Riaz Tabassum1, Tariq Mehmood1 and Nusrat Shafiq2

1 Department of Biochemistry, University of Agriculture, Faisalabad, Pakistan

2 Department of Biochemistry, Government College Women University, Faisalabad, Pakistan

*Address all correspondence to: sumairakausar@gcwuf.edu.pk

IntechOpen

© 2020 The Author(s). Licensee IntechOpen. This chapter is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.
References


[36] Zhang CM, Zhao J, Deng HY. MiR-155 promotes proliferation of

ERBB3 by enforced expression of microRNA miR-125a or miR-125b. Journal of Biological Chemistry. 2007;282:1479-1486


[43] Scott GK, Goga A, Bhaumik D, Berger CE, Sullivan CS, Benz CC. Coordinate suppression of ERBB2 and
Induction of MiR-146b Forms a Feedback Loop to Inhibit the NF-κB to IL-6 Signaling Axis and STAT3-Driven Cancer Phenotypes. Science Signal. 2014;7(310):ra11


[65] Caswell PT, Chan M, Lindsay AJ, McCaffrey MW, Boettiger D, Norman JC. Rab-coupling protein coordinates recycling of alpha5beta1 integrin and EGFR1 to promote cell migration in 3D microenvironments. Journal of Cell Biology. 2008;183:143-155


[74] Zhang GJ, Li Y, Zhou H, Xiao HX, Zhou T. miR-20a is an independent prognostic factor in colorectal cancer and is involved in cell metastasis. Molecular Medicine Reports. 2014;10:283-291


[92] Zhao Q, Zhai XY, Liu HQ, Shi YA, Li XB. MicroRNA-491-5p suppresses cervical cancer cell growth by targeting Htetr. Oncology Reports. 2015;34:979-986


[96] Huang H, Regan KM, Lou Z, Chen J, Tindall DJ. CDK2-dependent phosphorylation of FOXO1 as an


miR-888 is an expressed prostatic secretions-derived microRNA that promotes prostate cell growth and migration. Cell Cycle. 2014;13(2): 227-239


of miR-21 enhances chemotherapeutic effect of taxol in breast carcinoma cells. Technology in Cancer Research & Treatment. 2010;9:77-86


Chapter 2

Angiogenesis and Its Role in the Tumour Microenvironment: A Target for Cancer Therapy

Sophia Frentzas, Caroline Lum and Ting-Yu Chen

Abstract

The process of angiogenesis refers to the growth of new blood vessels from existing ones. Tumours can produce factors in the micro-environment which act on blood vessels to promote angiogenesis. It is therefore considered to be fundamental in tumour progression and metastatic dissemination. This neovascularization can be regulated by numerous endogenous factors in the tumour micro-environment. As a result, anti-angiogenic therapies have been developed in the hope of targeting this process to reduce tumour growth and progression. However, only a proportion of patients respond to therapy, indicating the presence of treatment resistance in some. In this chapter, we aim to highlight the process of angiogenesis and to review pivotal evidence for the use of anti-angiogenic therapies thus far (alone and in combination with other agents). Finally, we will illustrate recent evidence for the discovery of biomarkers for anti-angiogenic therapies and potential mechanisms of resistance to such agents.

Keywords: angiogenesis, tumour microenvironment, blood vessels, growth factor, stroma, anticancer therapies, biomarkers, resistance mechanisms

1. Introduction

Angiogenesis is a process that is important to the growth of cancers. It refers to when new blood vessels sprout from existing ones. This multi-step process is imperative to the physiological maintenance of the body such as tissue repair [1]. It is also thought to be a critical process that tumours depend on for the delivery of oxygen and nutrients, in order to facilitate growth and progression [2]. Both pro-angiogenic factors and anti-angiogenic factors play a role in modulating tumour neovascularisation. Notably, vascular endothelial growth factors (VEGF) and catecholaminergic signalling pathways have been shown to be key factors in angiogenesis, invasion and metastases [3]. Investigations into catecholaminergic signalling from the sympathetic nervous system have shown to increase VEGF and matrix metalloprotease (MMP) levels, promoting tumour growth, invasion and metastasis [4]. Since tumour angiogenesis requires the up-regulation of these factors, anti-angiogenic agents have now been developed. A multitude of trials have investigated the effect of anti-angiogenic agents on the progression of cancer as well as combination therapies to improve the current standard of care. However, not all patients respond to these, leading to studies that aim at elucidating the mechanisms of resistance.
Chapter 2

Angiogenesis and Its Role in the Tumour Microenvironment: A Target for Cancer Therapy

Sophia Frentzas, Caroline Lum and Ting-Yu Chen

Abstract

The process of angiogenesis refers to the growth of new blood vessels from existing ones. Tumours can produce factors in the micro-environment which act on blood vessels to promote angiogenesis. It is therefore considered to be fundamental in tumour progression and metastatic dissemination. This neovascularization can be regulated by numerous endogenous factors in the tumour micro-environment. As a result, anti-angiogenic therapies have been developed in the hope of targeting this process to reduce tumour growth and progression. However, only a proportion of patients respond to therapy, indicating the presence of treatment resistance in some. In this chapter, we aim to highlight the process of angiogenesis and to review pivotal evidence for the use of anti-angiogenic therapies thus far (alone and in combination with other agents). Finally, we will illustrate recent evidence for the discovery of biomarkers for anti-angiogenic therapies and potential mechanisms of resistance to such agents.

Keywords: angiogenesis, tumour microenvironment, blood vessels, growth factor, stroma, anticancer therapies, biomarkers, resistance mechanisms

1. Introduction

Angiogenesis is a process that is important to the growth of cancers. It refers to when new blood vessels sprout from existing ones. This multi-step process is imperative to the physiological maintenance of the body such as tissue repair [1]. It is also thought to be a critical process that tumours depend on for the delivery of oxygen and nutrients, in order to facilitate growth and progression [2]. Both pro-angiogenic factors and anti-angiogenic factors play a role in modulating tumour neovascularisation. Notably, vascular endothelial growth factors (VEGF) and catecholaminergic signalling pathways have been shown to be key factors in angiogenesis, invasion and metastases [3]. Investigations into catecholaminergic signalling from the sympathetic nervous system have shown to increase VEGF and matrix metalloprotease (MMP) levels, promoting tumour growth, invasion and metastasis [4]. Since tumour angiogenesis requires the up-regulation of these factors, anti-angiogenic agents have now been developed. A multitude of trials have investigated the effect of anti-angiogenic agents on the progression of cancer as well as combination therapies to improve the current standard of care. However, not all patients respond to these, leading to studies that aim at elucidating the mechanisms of resistance.
2. The role of VEGF in tumour angiogenesis

Angiogenesis is considered to be a fundamental event in tumour progression and metastatic dissemination and is [2] regulated by numerous endogenous factors that stimulate or inhibit neovascularisation [3]. One of the most studied pathways is the vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) family of ligands and their receptors [5]. In humans and mice, the VEGF family consists of 5 members: VEGF-A, -B, -C, -D and placental growth factor (PIGF). These ligands demonstrate variable specificity for the three VEGF receptors (VEGFR1, VEGFR2, VEGFR3) [3, 5]. The predominant member of the VEGF family involved in tumourigenesis is VEGF-A and will be referred to as simply ‘VEGF’ from herein.

One of the most important stimuli for tumour angiogenesis is hypoxia, which can occur when a rapidly growing tumour exceeds the ability of the local vasculature to supply its needs. Hypoxia-inducible factor 1 (HIF-1) is a heterodimeric transcription factor, made up of two DNA binding proteins (HIF-1α and HIF-1β), which induces the transcription of many genes, including VEGF [6]. In the presence of adequate oxygen concentrations, HIF-1α is ubiquitinated and subsequently degraded by the proteasome. However, under hypoxic conditions, HIF-1α is stabilised and persistently dimerises with the other subunit, HIF-1β, to form the HIF-1 heterodimer. The stabilised HIF-1 is then able to bind the VEGF promoter, leading to persistent transcription of the VEGF gene [7]. The expression of VEGF is also stimulated by oncogenes, including Ras, c-Src, Bcr-Abl and p53 [8]. A multitude of studies have shown that VEGF is overexpressed in the majority of solid tumours and that it is a key driver of sprouting angiogenesis [9]. Furthermore, it has been demonstrated in multiple xenograft models that VEGF inhibition supresses tumour growth [10].

3. Signalling in the VEGF pathway

Binding of VEGF to the extracellular domain of VEGFR2 causes receptor dimerisation and phosphorylation of the receptor on tyrosine residues within the intracellular domain (indicated by the four-digit numbers in the illustration). Pathways activated include the Ras–Raf–MEK–ERK pathway, PLCγ/PKC pathway and the PI3K/Akt pathway. Activation of downstream signalling from VEGF receptors exerts control over multiple processes required for angiogenesis including endothelial cell proliferation, migration, tube formation and vascular permeability.

![Figure 1](image-url)

*Figure 1.* Signalling from VEGFR2. The signalling cascades downstream of VEGFR2 have been the best studied and are illustrated here. VEGF binding to VEGFR2 induces dimerisation of VEGFR2 and phosphorylation of tyrosine residues (indicated by the four-digit numbers in the illustration). Pathways activated include the Ras–Raf–MEK–ERK pathway, PLCγ/PKC pathway and the PI3K/Akt pathway. Activation of downstream signalling from VEGF receptors exerts control over multiple processes required for angiogenesis including endothelial cell proliferation, migration, tube formation and vascular permeability.
intracellular domain (Figure 1) [11]. The Y1054 and Y1059 residues, which lie within the kinase domain, become phosphorylated in response to VEGF stimulation. These positively regulate the intrinsic kinase activity of the intracellular domain and signal to phospholipase-Cγ (PLCγ), which in turn leads to VEGFR2 internalisation [12]. The Y1175 and Y1214 residues lie in the carboxyl terminal tail. These residues become highly phosphorylated in response to VEGF. Y1214 signalling leads to endothelial cell migration and Y1175 signalling leads to PLCγ and extracellular related kinase 1/2 (ERK1/2) activation that is required for DNA synthesis and cell proliferation [13]. Activation of ERK1/2 requires the Ras-Raf-MEK-ERK1/2 signalling cascade but may also require the PLCγ/PKC/PKD pathway [14]. The roles of Y951 and Y996 residues, which lie in the kinase insert region, have not been definitively determined, but Y951 phosphorylation has been shown to increase endothelial cell migration and proliferation via both the PLC-γ and PI3K pathways [15].

4. Sprouting angiogenesis

According to the established dogma, VEGF released by tumours stimulates the growth of new vessels in the following way. The VEGF diffuses through the tissue and activates endothelial cells located in local blood vessels. Firstly, VEGF receptor activation induces the selection of sprouting endothelial cells. Proteinases such as urokinase-type plasminogen activator, uPA, and members of the matrix metalloproteinase (MMP) family mediates the dissolution of the vascular basement membrane and extracellular matrix to facilitate the infiltration of sprouting endothelial cells into the surrounding tissue [16]. Next, endothelial proliferation, migration and branching allows for the formation of new vessels. This is followed by sprout fusion and lumen formation where vessels fuse together to form a network. Finally, there is perfusion and maturation. This is where the stabilisation of new blood vessels forms a functionally perfused system, which is mediated by the recruitment of pericytes to surround the newly formed endothelial tubes; recruitment of pericytes prevents further endothelial cell proliferation and migration and also suppresses vessel leakage [17].

5. VEGF immunomodulation

Multiple possible mechanisms exist regarding immunosuppressive effects of VEGF on the tumour microenvironment. Firstly, due to the effect of VEGF on tumour vasculature, T cell migration from lymph nodes to the microenvironment may be impaired. Furthermore, the ability of T cells to migrate through vessels is negatively affected by VEGF through the down regulation of vascular endothelial selectins, adhesion molecules and promotion of Fas ligand expression. Secondly, VEGF binding to its receptor on myeloid derived suppressor cells within the tumour microenvironment results in STAT 3 signalling, with subsequent promotion of Treg cells and the down regulation of tumour specific T cells [18]. Additionally, the binding of VEGF to VEGFR2 has effects including reduced activation of cytotoxic CD8+ and CD4+ T cells, as well as the upregulation of inhibitory receptors including PD1 and CTLA4 [19]. The interaction of VEGF with VEGFR may also upregulate the programmed death ligand 1 (PDL1) on dendritic cells (DCs) [20]. Furthermore, the binding of VEGF to VEGFR1 on dendritic cells has the effect of inhibiting dendritic cell maturation [20].
6. The development of anti-angiogenic therapies

Given the key role VEGF is proposed to play in tumour angiogenesis, it is unsurprising that it has become a major drug target. Various drugs designed to inhibit VEGF signalling have been developed, including VEGF neutralising antibodies (e.g. bevacizumab), novel fusion proteins which bind pro-angiogenic growth factors (e.g. aflibercept) and VEGF receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitors (e.g. sunitinib) [5, 21]. Such agents have shown promise in the treatment of several malignancies, including mCRC, metastatic renal cell carcinoma (mRCC), metastatic lung cancer, hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) and pancreatic neuroendocrine tumours (PNET) [22].

6.1 Bevacizumab

Bevacizumab (Avastin®) is a recombinant humanised monoclonal antibody that binds to the VEGF-A isoform of human VEGF specifically and prevents the VEGF from activating the VEGF receptor [23].

6.1.1 Bevacizumab in metastatic CRC

Trials with bevacizumab as a single agent in metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC) failed to demonstrate activity, but early Phase I trials demonstrated that it has the potential to be combined with many chemotherapy agents [24]. In the advanced setting, several randomised Phase II and III clinical trials clearly demonstrated that bevacizumab improves response rates (ORR), progression free survival (PFS) and overall survival (OS) in mCRC, when added to standard chemotherapy in the first line setting [25, 26], and the second line setting [27] (Table 1). In February 2004, the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved bevacizumab for the treatment of mCRC in combination with 5-fluorouracil-based chemotherapy regimens based on a pivotal Phase III study which demonstrated significant PFS and OS survival benefit [25]. Of clinical importance, bevacizumab in combination with a fluoropyrimidine has also demonstrated efficacy in elderly patients with mCRC [26].

Despite these data, only a small proportion of patients benefit from the addition of bevacizumab, and furthermore, some studies have demonstrated only an increase in PFS, with no increase in ORR or OS (Table 1) [28]. Additionally, even those who respond initially to bevacizumab combined with chemotherapy will inevitably develop resistance and relapse [29].

In the setting of colorectal liver-only metastasis (CRLM), it has been well demonstrated that preoperative chemotherapy improves outcome and metastatectomy rates [30]. With this in mind, and on the basis that bevacizumab can improve ORR, several groups set out to evaluate its role in the preoperative CRLM setting. Findings from a small non-randomised controlled trial of neoadjuvant conventional chemotherapy with bevacizumab in high-risk CRLM patients alluded to an improvement of CRC liver metastasis rate to 40% [31]. Data from retrospective, inter-trial studies have also suggested that the addition of bevacizumab to chemotherapy significantly improves pathological response in CRLM compared to when chemotherapy is administered alone [32]. Subgroup post hoc analyses extracted from large randomised controlled trials of unselected patients have failed to show significant improvements in resection rates with the addition of bevacizumab [33]. Without prospective randomised trials however, it is difficult to make conclusions regarding the efficacy of chemotherapy versus chemotherapy combined with bevacizumab in the CRLM setting.

The role of continuing bevacizumab beyond first progression in advanced colorectal cancer has also been examined. The results of two non-randomised
Angiogenesis and Its Role in the Tumour Microenvironment: A Target for Cancer Therapy
DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.89667

6.1 Bevacizumab

Table 1. Studies investigating bevacizumab in metastatic colorectal cancer in the first line.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Tumour</th>
<th>Treatment groups</th>
<th>ORR (%)</th>
<th>mPFS (months)</th>
<th>HR and significance for PFS</th>
<th>mOS (months)</th>
<th>HR and significance for survival</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hurwitz et al., 2004¹</td>
<td>mCRC</td>
<td>Irinotecan + LV</td>
<td>44.8</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>0.54 P=0.001</td>
<td>20.3</td>
<td>0.66 P=0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+ Bevacizumab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Irinotecan + LV</td>
<td>34.8</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>15.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+ Bevacizumab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kabbinavar et al., 2005²</td>
<td>mCRC</td>
<td>Bevacizumab</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>0.5 P=0.0002</td>
<td>16.6</td>
<td>0.79 P=0.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FOLFOX</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>12.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salz et al., 2008³</td>
<td>mCRC</td>
<td>XELOX + Bevacizum</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>0.83 P=0.0023</td>
<td>21.3</td>
<td>0.89 P=0.077</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Or FOLFOX</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td>19.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cunningham et al., 2013⁴</td>
<td>mCRC</td>
<td>Cape + Bevacizum</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>0.55 P=0.0001</td>
<td>20.7</td>
<td>0.79 P=0.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cape</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>16.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Orr: objective response rate; FOLFOX: Folinic acid plus fluorouracil; HCC: hepatocellular carcinoma; mCRC: metastatic colorectal cancer; mRCC: metastatic renal cell carcinoma; NSCLC: non-small cell lung cancer; OS: overall survival; PFS: progression free survival; PREP: preoperative chemotherapy; PVE: preoperative chemotherapy; RR: response rate. (PFS) and overall survival (OS).

Observational cohort studies (BRiTE and ARIES) demonstrated a significant correlation between the use of bevacizumab beyond progression and substantial improvement in OS [34, 35]. Benefit of treatment beyond progression following first line treatment was later confirmed in a prospective randomised trial [36].

The efficacy of bevacizumab has also been evaluated in the adjuvant setting in CRC patients. Two large randomised studies compared survival between the following arms: adjuvant chemotherapy alone for 6 months versus adjuvant chemotherapy in combination with bevacizumab for 6 months (followed by bevacizumab alone for 6 months). Both studies demonstrated that at 1 year there was an improvement in PFS in the bevacizumab arm. However, no significant difference in OS was observed between treatment arms when assessed at 3 or 5 years [37, 38]. In fact, an analysis at 5 years in the AVANT study demonstrated a possible detrimental effect on survival with the addition of bevacizumab, documenting a higher number of relapses and deaths due to disease progression [37].

6.1.2 Bevacizumab in other tumour types

Bevacizumab in combination with cytotoxic chemotherapy has also shown significant clinical efficacy in other tumour types.

In advanced non-squamous non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC), two randomised controlled phase III trials demonstrated significant benefit in PFS when bevacizumab was added to platinum-based doublet chemotherapy [39, 40], but only one study reported an increase in OS [40]. To further understand this discrepancy, a recent meta-analysis pooling data from several studies including the aforementioned two, deduced a modest but significant improvement in OS [41]. More recently in metastatic non-squamous NSCLC, the Impower150 phase 3 clinical trial investigated treatment with...
bevacizumab plus platinum doublet chemotherapy with or without the PDL1 inhibitor atezolizumab. Treatment with atezolizumab, bevacizumab and chemotherapy compared with bevacizumab and chemotherapy resulted in a significant improvement in PFS at 6 months (66.9% vs. 36.5%) and at 12 months (56.1% vs. 18%) [42]. In an interim analysis of OS, an improvement was again seen (Table 2) [42].

In advanced ovarian cancer, in the first- and second-line settings, the efficacy of bevacizumab has been assessed when added to platinum-based chemotherapy doublets. Two pivotal first line phase III studies utilising the same chemotherapy doublet (ICON7/AGO-OVAR and GOG-0218 trials) demonstrated a significant improvement in PFS [43]. An updated survival analysis failed to show a significant survival benefit [43].

Bevacizumab has been investigated in glioblastoma multiforme (GBM), in the recurrent setting following first line treatment with temozolamide and radiotherapy. In this setting bevacizumab monotherapy is ineffective, however in combination with lomustine it has resulted in improvement in PFS but not OS [44]. Bevacizumab has also been investigated in the first line setting with chemotherapy in a large randomised placebo controlled trial, but failed to improve outcomes [45].

Earlier phase III trials in RCC have demonstrated efficacy of bevacizumab in combination with sorafenib, sunitinib and interferon alpha (Table 2). More recently, bevacizumab has been combined with atezolizumab in metastatic RCC. A phase III randomised trial confirmed significant improvement in PFS for bevacizumab combined with atezolizumab compared with sunitinib monotherapy but mature OS data are still awaited [46].

Despite such encouraging results, bevacizumab has thus far failed to make a significant impact in several other indications, including metastatic breast cancer (mBC), melanoma, pancreatic cancer and prostate cancer. Interestingly, in breast cancer, pooled data from four large clinical trials demonstrated that it neither prolonged OS, nor delayed disease progression significantly, leading the FDA to revoke its initial approval of bevacizumab for mBC [47]. The variation in impact that bevacizumab has, not only across tumour types, but also within a single tumour type, is curious and needs to be better understood.

6.2 Ramucirumab

Ramucirumab is a fully human IgG1 monoclonal antibody that binds to the extracellular domain of VEGFR-2, blocking VEGF from activating the receptor [48]. Clinical efficacy and tolerability have been demonstrated in a number of preclinical studies and more recently in phase III trials. In the refractory metastatic gastric and gastro-oesophageal junction (GOJ) adenocarcinoma setting, ramucirumab significantly improved median OS compared with placebo but only represents an absolute improvement of 1.4 months [49]. In the second line setting of advanced gastric and GOJ adenocarcinoma, the combination of ramucirumab and paclitaxel has become standard treatment based on the results of the pivotal RAINBOW trial showing significant improvement in OS compared with paclitaxel and placebo [50]. Ramucirumab has not shown benefit in the first line setting including combination with chemotherapy [51].

Ramucirumab has also been investigated in metastatic NSCLC but does not yet have an established role for this indication. After progression on first line platinum based chemotherapy, there was a small but statistically significant benefit in median OS of ramucirumab added to docetaxel [52]. Early results of the RELAY phase 3 clinical trial investigating ramucirumab in combination with erlotinib in the first
Current Cancer Treatment

44

bevacizumab plus platinum doublet chemotherapy with or without the PDL1 inhibitor atezolizumab. Treatment with atezolizumab, bevacizumab and chemotherapy compared with bevacizumab and chemotherapy resulted in a significant improvement in PFS at 6 months (66.9% vs. 36.5%) and at 12 months (56.1% vs. 18%) [42]. In an interim analysis of OS, an improvement was again seen (Table 2) [42].

In advanced ovarian cancer, in the first- and second-line settings, the efficacy of bevacizumab has been assessed when added to platinum-based chemotherapy doublets. Two pivotal first line phase III studies utilising the same chemotherapy doublet (ICON7/AGO-OV AR and GOG-0218 trials) demonstrated a significant improvement in PFS [43]. An updated survival analysis failed to show a significant survival benefit [43].

Bevacizumab has been investigated in glioblastoma multiforme (GBM), in the recurrent setting following first line treatment with temozolamide and radiation therapy. In this setting bevacizumab monotherapy is ineffective, however in combination with lomustine it has resulted in improvement in PFS but not OS [44]. Bevacizumab has also been investigated in the first line setting with chemoradiation in a large randomised placebo controlled trial, but failed to improve outcomes [45].

Earlier phase III trials in RCC have demonstrated efficacy of bevacizumab in combination with sorafenib, sunitinib and interferon alpha (Table 2). More recently, bevacizumab has been combined with atezolizumab in metastatic RCC. A phase III randomised trial confirmed significant improvement in PFS for bevacizumab combined with atezolizumab compared with sunitinib monotherapy but mature OS data are still awaited [46].

Despite such encouraging results, bevacizumab has thus far failed to make a significant impact in several other indications, including metastatic breast cancer (mBC), melanoma, pancreatic cancer and prostate cancer. Interestingly, in breast cancer, pooled data from four large clinical trials demonstrated that it neither prolonged OS, nor delayed disease progression significantly, leading the FDA to revoke its initial approval of bevacizumab for mBC [47]. The variation in impact that bevacizumab has, not only across tumour types, but also within a single tumour type, is curious and needs to be better understood.

6.2 Ramucirumab

Ramucirumab is a fully human IgG1 monoclonal antibody that binds to the extracellular domain of VEGFR-2, blocking VEGF from activating the receptor [48]. Clinical efficacy and tolerability have been demonstrated in a number of preclinical studies and more recently in phase III trials. In the refractory metastatic gastric and gastro-oesophageal junction (GOJ) adenocarcinoma setting, ramucirumab significantly improved median OS compared with placebo but this only represented an absolute improvement of 1.4 months [49]. In the second line setting of advanced gastric and GOJ adenocarcinoma, the combination of ramucirumab and paclitaxel has become standard treatment based on the results of the pivotal RAINBOW trial showing significant improvement in OS compared with paclitaxel and placebo [50]. Ramucirumab has not shown benefit in the first line setting including combination with chemotherapy [51].

Ramucirumab has also been investigated in metastatic NSCLC but does not yet have an established role for this indication. After progression on first line platinum based chemotherapy, there was a small but statistically significant benefit in median OS of ramucirumab added to docetaxel [52]. Early results of the RELAY phase 3 clinical trial investigating ramucirumab in combination with erlotinib in the first line setting of metastatic EGFR mutated NSCLC have indicated an improvement in PFS however formal publication of the study findings are awaited.

Ramucirumab has also been investigated in urothelial cancers. In a phase III trial of ramucirumab plus docetaxel compared with docetaxel plus placebo in patients with advanced urothelial carcinoma who had received platinum-based chemotherapy, there was a statistically significant improvement in median PFS (4.07 months vs. 2.76 months) [53].

Table 2.
Studies investigating anti-VEGF agents in NSCLC and RCC.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Tumour</th>
<th>Treatment groups</th>
<th>ORR (%)</th>
<th>mPFS (months)</th>
<th>HR and significance for PFS</th>
<th>mOS (months)</th>
<th>HR and significance for survival</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sandler et al 2006a</td>
<td>Recurrent/advanced NSCLC</td>
<td>Carbo + pacl + Bev</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>0.66 &lt;0.001</td>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>0.79 &lt;0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Carbo + Bev</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beck et al., 2009b</td>
<td>Advanced NSCLC</td>
<td>Carbo + gem + Bev</td>
<td>37.8</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>7.5mg/kg vs placebo 0.75 P&lt;0.0003</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Carbo + gem + Bev 15mg/kg</td>
<td>34.6</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>Bev 15mg/kg vs placebo 0.85 P=0.0456</td>
<td>13.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Carbo + gem + placebo</td>
<td>21.6</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Socinski et al., 2018</td>
<td>Treat NSCLC</td>
<td>Atotecizumab + Carbo + pacl (ACP)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>0.62* P&lt;0.001 (ABC vs BC)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>ABCP vs BCP P=0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Carbo + pacl + Bev (BCP)</td>
<td>48*</td>
<td>6.8* 6.8*** 6.1*** 9.7***</td>
<td></td>
<td>14.7* P&lt;0.02</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Atezo + Carbo + pacl + Bev (ABCP)</td>
<td>63.5*</td>
<td>8.3* 11.3* 9.7***</td>
<td></td>
<td>19.2* P&lt;0.02</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rini et al., 2008b</td>
<td>mRCC</td>
<td>Bev + IFN</td>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>0.71 P&lt;0.0001</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IFN</td>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>19.3</td>
<td>0.77 P&lt;0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forssell et al., 2009b</td>
<td>mRCC</td>
<td>Sutatenib</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>0.44 P&lt;0.001</td>
<td>15.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Placebo</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>15.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motzer et al., 2009b</td>
<td>mRCC</td>
<td>Sutatenib</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0.42 P&lt;0.001</td>
<td>26.4</td>
<td>0.821 P=0.051</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IFN-α</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>21.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bev: bevacizumab; C: cycle; Carbo: carboplatin; chem: chemotherapy; gem: gemcitabine; HR: hazard ratio; IFN: interferon; mOS: median overall survival; mPFS: median progression free survival; mRCC: metastatic renal cell carcinoma; N: number of participants; NA: not available; NR: not reached; NSCLC: non-small cell lung cancer; ORR: objective response rate; pacli: paclitaxel; PFS: progression free survival; PD-L1: programmed death-ligand 1.

* Population with wild type (WT) genotype

** Patients with EGFR and ALK mutations

DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.89667
6.3 Aflibercept

Aflibercept is a recombinant fusion protein that binds to VEGF-A, VEGF-B and placental growth factor (PLGF), all of which have been implicated in angiogenesis and/or the survival of newly formed blood vessels [54]. As it binds to additional pro-angiogenic targets (compared to bevacizumab which binds only VEGF-A), aflibercept may provide further anti-angiogenic effects compared to targeting VEGF-A alone. In preclinical studies, it demonstrated a broad range of anti-tumour and anti-angiogenic activity both alone and in combination with chemotherapy, which was also observed in phase I clinical trials [55]. Recently, a large randomised phase III clinical trial (VELOUR) in advanced CRC patients, receiving second line therapy, demonstrated that the addition of aflibercept to systemic chemotherapy significantly improved outcomes compared to chemotherapy alone [56]. Based on this data, aflibercept was recently approved for use in the second line setting in mCRC when given in combination with chemotherapy. Importantly, results from a subanalysis of VELOUR showed that there was no significant impact of prior exposure to bevacizumab, illustrating the benefit that it provides as a multiple angiogenic factor trap, in a setting where resistance to bevacizumab may have developed [57].

6.4 Receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs)

Several small molecule inhibitors of VEGF receptor tyrosine kinase activity now have an established role in the treatment of certain tumour types, including mRCC, HCC and advanced CRC. These small molecule inhibitors readily diffuse through the cell membrane to compete for ATP binding to the intracellular tyrosine kinase domain of VEGF receptor 2.

6.4.1 Sunitinib

Sunitinib is an orally active multi-kinase inhibitor, which targets VEGFR1–3, PDGFRα/β, c-Kit and FLT3 [58]. Xenograft models have clearly demonstrated that as well as inhibiting new blood vessel formation, sunitinib also induces regression of newly formed immature vessels and significantly stunts tumour growth [59]. Furthermore, immunohistochemical studies performed on human tissue derived from mRCC patients treated with sunitinib have demonstrated that this agent can induce a reduction in tumour vessel density [60].

In terms of outcome in the clinical setting, sunitinib initially showed efficacy, as a single agent, for second-line therapy in single-arm, Phase II studies in mRCC [61]. Patients treated with sunitinib showed promising outcomes in terms of ORR, response duration, PFS and OS. A pivotal Phase III study was subsequently conducted comparing sunitinib with interferon-α as a first-line treatment in mRCC, which demonstrated improved OS, PFS and ORR in the sunitinib arm [62]. Based on such data, sunitinib was approved by the FDA in 2006 for the first line treatment of mRCC. Other TKI’s, with similar target specificity (sorafenib, pazopanib, cabozantinib and axitinib) also have activity in mRCC. Combination with immunotherapeutic agents has also shown promising results and we are seeing the treatment algorithm for mRCC change rapidly. In a recent landmark phase 3 trial of advanced RCC in the first line setting, axitinib was combined with the PD1 inhibitor pembrolizumab and compared with sunitinib monotherapy (KEYNOTE-426). The results are promising with a significant improvement in PFS and ORR with axitinib and pembrolizumab, however more mature OS data are awaited [63].
The role of such TKIs has also been evaluated in mCRC. The anti-tumour and anti-angiogenic effects of sunitinib have been well documented in a series of CRC xenograft tumour models [64]. In the clinical setting, however, sunitinib employed either as a single agent or with combination chemotherapy, has failed to demonstrate favourable outcome, both for ORR and PFS [65].

6.4.2 Regorafenib

Recently, another TKI called regorafenib has created a lot of interest in advanced CRC. This agent inhibits VEGFR1-3, PDGFRα/β, KIT, RET, FGFR1 and Tie2. It is also a potent inhibitor of Raf-1 and suppresses both wild-type and V599E mutant BRAF activity in vitro and in mouse models [66]. Significant anti-tumour and anti-angiogenic effects in CRC xenograft models, both as a single agent and in combination with irinotecan chemotherapy have been reported [67]. In the clinical setting, the Phase III CORRECT trial demonstrated significant benefit for OS and PFS in advanced CRC patients, when it was used as a single agent compared to best supportive care, in a population who had failed previous standard therapy [68]. Based on this data, regorafenib was approved by the FDA as a multikinase inhibitor for metastatic colorectal cancer in the third line setting in 2012.

Regorafenib also has clinical utility in gastrointestinal stromal tumours (GIST) where it is currently employed in the third line setting after imatinib and sunitinib. This indication followed from a phase 3 randomised trial, demonstrating significantly improved PFS for regorafenib compared with placebo (4.8 months vs. 0.9 months) [69]. There was no significant difference in OS, however this trial did allow for crossover which likely impacted on this finding [69].

Regorafenib has FDA approval for second line treatment of HCC following the positive results of the phase 3 RESORCE clinical trial. Compared with placebo, regorafenib demonstrated survival benefit [70].

7. Potential mechanisms of synergy between bevacizumab and chemotherapy

Early phase clinical trials have demonstrated that bevacizumab, in combination with systemic cytotoxic chemotherapy, can potentiate treatment efficacy when given concomitantly [71]. In fact, in most clinical settings, with the exception of ovarian cancer where bevacizumab has been observed to have single agent activity [72], bevacizumab has only shown significant activity when it is combined with cytotoxic chemotherapy and the same is true for aflibercept [21].

It has been well-established that the tumour vasculature is dysfunctional and leaky, resulting in enhanced interstitial fluid pressure and thus preventing effective delivery of chemotherapy [73]. Evidence from preclinical studies showed that bevacizumab can ‘normalise’ the chaotic tumour vasculature, achieving reduced vessel tortuosity, reduced leakiness and reduced interstitial fluid pressure. Based on these studies, it was proposed that bevacizumab works in combination with chemotherapy to improve chemotherapy delivery [71, 73], which is now a widely accepted notion amongst many clinicians.

However, this concept is also highly controversial, with some work even refuting the normalisation hypothesis. For example, one group demonstrated that bevacizumab persistently reduced both tumour perfusion and chemotherapy delivery when NSCLC patients were treated with bevacizumab-containing chemotherapy [74]. Therefore, other potential explanations for synergy between bevacizumab and
chemotherapy must be considered. Current alternative theories based mostly on preclinical data include: (1) direct synergy between the anti-angiogenic effects of bevacizumab and potential anti-angiogenic effects of chemotherapy [75], (2) targeting of VEGF signalling directly in cancer cells by bevacizumab [21], (3) chemotherapy may inhibit resistance to bevacizumab, because chemotherapy suppresses the tumour recruitment of myeloid cells that have been implicated in resistance to bevacizumab [76], (4) bevacizumab may prevent tumour rebound that may occur during breaks in chemotherapy [76].

It should be noted that vessel normalisation facilitated by anti-angiogenic agents may provide therapeutic benefit through other mechanisms, which are independent of chemotherapy delivery. For example, in glioblastoma patients, vessel normalisation induced by single agent VEGF-targeted therapy may prolong survival due to other effects, such as oedema control or improved tumour oxygenation [77].

There are two other curious observations that have yet to be properly explained. Firstly, the synergistic effect of adding bevacizumab to chemotherapy does not occur in all tumour types. For example, the addition of bevacizumab does not lead to improvements in outcome in advanced breast cancer [78]. Secondly, VEGFR TKIs show single agent activity without the need for co-administration of chemotherapy [21].

Recent insight into these two curious observations has been reported. A study examining both clinical and mouse tumour tissue specimens demonstrated that tumour types utilising a vasculature surrounded by a well-developed stroma (e.g. mCRC, NSCLC) respond better to bevacizumab when it is added to chemotherapy as opposed to tumour types that utilise a vasculature without a well-developed intervening stromal component (e.g. mRCC, PNET) which respond better to VEGF TKIs alone [79]. This suggests that tumour cell interactions with different stromal components may influence response to different anti-angiogenic agents and how they synergise with concomitant drugs. However, there is still much work to be done in order to understand the mechanisms involved.

8. Synergy of anti-angiogenic agents with immunomodulatory therapy

A series of pre-clinical studies have shown that the use of anti-angiogenic agents along with immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICI) as a combination therapy has a synergistic and enhanced effect on the tumour when compared to either ICI therapy or anti-angiogenic therapy alone. Immunotherapy has emerged as a promising treatment option for many cancer types, offering hope for patients with the demonstration of improved outcomes including durable responses in some. Unfortunately, there are still many patients that either have short lived responses to such therapies or none at all. To overcome resistance mechanisms, combinations of immunotherapy with other treatments including VEGF inhibitors are being explored.

Since 2013, pre-clinical investigations in mice with various tumours have indicated that the combination of ICI and anti-angiogenic agents results in prolonged overall survival [80]. It has been observed that the VEGF can cause the upregulation of immune checkpoint molecules such as PD-1 and as a result, the use of anti-VEGF agents has been seen to reduce the expression of PD-1 on cytotoxic T lymphocytes [81]. Thus, the combination of using both anti-VEGF agents as well as anti-PD-1 agents could have a synergistic effect on inhibiting further tumour development [81]. Through the encouraging findings of pre-clinical investigations, many clinical studies have recently or are still in the process of investigating this.

There are a multitude of clinical studies supporting the role of bevacizumab in the positive immune modulation of the tumour microenvironment and its beneficial effects when combined with the immune checkpoint PD1/PDL1 and...
CTLAA4 inhibitors. In a study investigating melanoma patients treated with ipilimumab plus bevacizumab versus ipilimumab alone, the results showed that the combination therapy increased circulating CD4+ and CD8+ T cells compared with ipilimumab monotherapy [82]. The investigation showed that there was a greater median overall survival in patients undergoing combination therapy (25.1 months) compared to those who underwent the ipilimumab alone treatment (10.1 months) [82]. Furthermore, a separate study of patients with RCC investigating the effect that bevacizumab plus atezolizumab had versus bevacizumab alone found that the combination therapy demonstrated a reduction in neovasculature-related gene expression and decreased microvascular density. The treatment was also associated with an increased tumour infiltration of CD8+ T cells as demonstrated by immunohistochemical staining of cells [83]. This study also demonstrated that MHC Class I is upregulated as a result of the treatment and that both intratumoural CD8+ T cells and macrophages increased as well.

In a phase II study involving patients with RCC, as compared with sunitinib monotherapy, atezolizumab and bevacizumab demonstrated improvements in PFS in patients with an immunosuppressive tumour microenvironment [84]. Whilst it was also discovered that the use of atezolizumab failed to generate an anti-tumour immune response (possibly due to myeloid-induced immune suppression), the addition of bevacizumab to atezolizumab was found to be able to overcome this suppression [84].

Both pre-clinical and clinical studies have shown that anti-angiogenic agents and immunomodulatory therapies have a synergistic affect in reducing tumour growth and a multitude of clinical trials are currently investigating this synergy further. Thus, there is promise in the use of a combination therapy with anti-angiogenic agents and immunomodulatory agents to improve on patient prognosis.

9. Potential predictive biomarkers for anti-angiogenic agents

In view of the variable outcomes seen in the clinic, there is a need for the development of validated predictive biomarkers of response for anti-angiogenic therapy. In this way, patients who will derive benefit from such agents could be appropriately selected, whilst those that will not derive benefit (either at the outset or during therapy) could be selected for alternative, more effective therapy. Such a strategy would not only improve clinical outcomes but would also reduce the unnecessary burden of (a) toxicity to the patient, and (b) cost to the economy. Despite extensive international research in this field, there is currently no biomarker which predicts benefit or resistance to anti-angiogenic agents that is approved for routine clinical practice. The following are amongst several which have been investigated in the clinical setting.

9.1 Circulating biomarkers

Circulating biomarkers are an attractive tool for patients and clinicians as ‘liquid biopsies’ are relatively non-invasive and easy to perform, as compared with tissue biopsies of tumour with associated risks and potential technical difficulties depending on tumour site. VEGF levels have been studied as a potential biomarker with high levels associated with poorer outcomes [85]. Findings regarding its utility as a predictive biomarker have been more inconsistent [85]. An analysis of four randomised phase 3 trials investigated circulating VEGF level as a prognostic and predictive biomarker in mCRC, lung cancer and RCC which included bevacizumab in the treatment regimen. Tumour specimens were also tested for VEGF level. This
found that higher baseline circulating VEGF levels were associated with poorer clinical outcomes but levels did not predict response to bevacizumab [86]. There is early evidence from small and exploratory studies to suggest soluble VEGFR-1, with higher levels being associated with poorer outcomes with anti-angiogenic treatments, however larger studies are required to confirm these findings [87].

Other potential circulating biomarkers have also been investigated. In mCRC, elevated IL-8 levels at baseline were associated with a shorter PFS in patients treated with chemotherapy (FOLFIRI) and bevacizumab [88]. Elevated LDH and neutrophil levels have been found to independently predict poorer survival in patients treated with chemotherapy plus bevacizumab [89]. A promising predictive biomarker for response to bevacizumab based therapy in CRC appears to be circulating endothelial cells, with studies showing that patients with lower circulating endothelial cells at baseline undergoing treatment with bevacizumab based therapy had improved PFS [90].

9.2 Levels of tumour VEGF isoforms

Levels of VEGF expression in a tumour could be a determinant of responsiveness to anti-VEGF therapy. Some small studies have demonstrated a relationship between baseline VEGF expression and response, however these findings have not been consistently replicated in large clinical trials and are often more informative as prognostic rather than predictive biomarkers [91]. Data from more recent prospective studies, however, have shown more consistency in the use of VEGF as a biomarker. A large randomised trial in patients with advanced breast cancer treated with bevacizumab demonstrated a significant association between high circulating levels of VEGF and survival benefit [78]. VEGF expression in tumours was investigated in the large phase III clinical trial of bevacizumab plus chemotherapy in mCRC, but this failed to predict outcomes [92].

There are multiple reasons why using VEGF expression as a biomarker could be problematic: (1) advanced tumours express numerous pro-angiogenic factors in addition to VEGF which could confer resistance to bevacizumab irrespective of the amount of VEGF produced [93], (2) differences in the intensity of VEGF expression might be too small to be clinically relevant, (3) hypoxia, which is promoted by anti-angiogenic therapy, is an important inducer of VEGF expression and might, therefore, lead to increased VEGF production in the presence of bevacizumab treatment; indeed, anti-angiogenic agents have been shown to induce expression of VEGF even in tumour naive hosts [94], (4) variations in methodology across centres (including sample handling, the use of different scoring systems and non-validated antibodies) have a significant effect on biomarker trial results [95], (5) it is very challenging to standardise cut-offs for low and high VEGF levels, due to: (a) different methods used to measure VEGF at different centres and (b) differences in biology that occur between racial groups, tumour types and different stages of disease [95].

9.3 Levels of alternative pro-angiogenic growth factors

Studies which have investigated other single circulating factors (such as FGF2, and soluble VEGFR2) have also yielded contradictory and unsatisfactory conclusions [96]. Interestingly, however, recent clinical work in mRCC patients treated with anti-angiogenic TKIs suggests that profiling multiple circulating factors in the blood could have a more powerful prognostic and predictive role than assessing levels of single factors alone [97]. In this study, when patients with mRCC were treated with the TKI pazopanib, a biomarker signature of six factors (HGF, interleukin 6 and
interleukin 8, osteopontin, VEGF and TIMP1) was able to distinguish a sub-group of patients that derived a significantly greater overall survival benefit from this agent.

9.4 VEGF polymorphisms

Polymorphisms in VEGF or VEGF receptors have been proposed to predict outcome from anti-angiogenic therapy. As these are generally binary in nature, they are attractive biomarkers since they may be easier to measure and apply prospectively. In metastatic breast cancer, polymorphisms in VEGF and VEGFR2 were analysed in several retrospective subset analyses in patients treated with chemotherapy, with or without bevacizumab. Two polymorphisms within the VEGF promoter/5’ untranslated region, VEGF alleles −2578AA and −1154AA, were significantly associated with improved OS in the bevacizumab plus paclitaxel group when compared to the −2578CA/−2578CC and −1154GA/−1154GG alleles. In contrast, they did not have prognostic power for OS in the chemotherapy-only arm [98]. The predictive power of the −2578AA and −1154AA VEGF alleles was also reported in a retrospective subset analysis of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer that received either FOLFIRI (leucovorin, fluorouracil, and irinotecan) plus bevacizumab or XELIRI (capecitabine and irinotecan) plus bevacizumab [99].

More recently, the role of VEGFR1 polymorphisms was studied in a large meta-analysis pooling DNA data from two phase III trials in patients with advanced pancreatic cancer treated with bevacizumab. VEGFR1 −1213AC/−1213CC alleles were significantly associated with poor outcome in patients receiving bevacizumab when compared to VEGFR1 −1213AA alleles [100]. To understand how this VEGFR1 polymorphism functionally affects VEGFR1 expression and how it might explain its correlation with poor outcome in patients receiving bevacizumab, Lambrechts and colleagues performed an in vitro study where the mutant codon of Tyr1213 was transiently overexpressed in HEK293T cells. Lysates from these cells demonstrated a significant increase in expression and signalling of VEGFR1 compared to HEK293T cells harbouring the wild type codon, thus providing a biological rationale for the role of this polymorphism as a negative predictive marker of response [100]. A significant correlation of the VEGFR −1213 with poor outcome was also corroborated by a subsequent study in patients with mRCC treated with sunitinib [101].

9.5 Radiological parameters

Functional clinical imaging, taking into account tumour vasculature or metabolic activity by utilising CT, MRI or PET scanning, either prior to commencing treatment or following brief exposure of patients to therapy, may be a useful tool for predicting response or resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy [102]. For conventional cytotoxic chemotherapy, imaging has been employed to assess therapy response based on change in tumour size, as defined by RECIST (Response Evaluation Criteria In Solid Tumours). However, biological agents, such as bevacizumab and TKIs, may be cytostatic in terms of their mechanism of action, thus size may not be the only parameter that needs to be considered when assessing response and outcome. Examination of various parameters such as blood flow and tumour morphology may provide additional important predictive information.

9.5.1 Baseline vascular perfusion on imaging

Several studies have examined pre-treatment levels of tumour perfusion and whether they can predict outcome. For example, enhanced levels of vessel perfusion
at baseline (measured by contrast-assisted tumour enhancement) in mRCC patients treated with VEGF TKIs has been shown to predict for response and survival [103].

9.5.2 Changes in vascular characteristics on imaging

Early alterations in features of the tumour vasculature on imaging after a short period of therapy have also been shown to be associated with response and outcome. For example, in studies of mRCC patients treated with anti-angiogenic TKIs, response criteria that measured both a significant reduction in tumour vascular perfusion and a significant reduction in tumour size were more predictive of outcome compared to change in lesion size alone [104].

Although the use of the above radiological criteria may seem promising as predictors of response and outcome, there are associated challenges that need to be considered before incorporating them into clinical practice. These include, (a) diversity in the methodologies used to assess potential surrogate radiological biomarkers of response between studies and across centres, and (b) insufficient comprehension of how certain radiological features correlate with the underlying tumour biology.

10. Measuring the clinical response to anti-angiogenic agents

Currently, the efficacy of any anti-neoplastic therapy is assessed by several outcome measures, which include (a) effective downsizing of tumours on clinical imaging (to facilitate curative surgery or consolidative radiotherapy for localised disease and to reduce the symptomatic burden of disease in the metastatic setting), (b) prolongation of the interval where a patient is either disease-free or progression-free, and (c) prolongation of survival.

Conventional assessment of residual tumour volume after cytotoxic chemotherapy has traditionally been performed with the use of size-based criteria (overall response rate, ORR, by RECIST). This was based on evidence that there is good correlation between radiological information and residual viable tumour (pathological response) and good correlation with progression-free (PFS) and overall survival (OS) in patients treated with cytotoxic chemotherapy [105]. However, with the advent of biological therapies, such as bevacizumab, the value of utilising RECIST on its own as a surrogate for outcome has been questioned and new imaging criteria have been proposed [102].

10.1 RECIST criteria

For anti-angiogenic therapy employed in advanced malignant disease, retrospective clinical meta-analyses have (a) highlighted the pitfalls and limitations of using RECIST alone in the assessment of response and progression, and (b) highlighted a disassociation of RECIST from time-related endpoints of PFS and OS [105].

This curiosity was provoked by several large randomised clinical trials investigating the effect of adding bevacizumab to conventional chemotherapy in different tumour types. These have consistently demonstrated that significant improvements in PFS and OS were incongruent with modest increases in ORRs [25, 28, 40]. In their CRC meta-analysis, Grothey and colleagues specifically examined the impact of tumour response to bevacizumab (ORR) on treatment benefit (PFS, OS) and concluded that patients who did not attain a positive response according to RECIST (i.e. stable disease) in fact
showed significant benefit from bevacizumab, which was of the same magnitude as responding patients (i.e. complete or partial response) [105].

Moreover, similar concepts have consistently featured in several Phase I and II clinical trials employing antiangiogenic agents, and other molecular targeted therapies. These studies corroborate that there is little value in utilising ORR alone, particularly in predicting whether an agent will ultimately have truly meaningful effects on pathological response or in prolonging survival [106]. The underlying reason for these incongruent observations with bevacizumab and other molecular targeted therapies may be because such agents are cytostatic rather than cytotoxic [107].

10.2 Morphological response criteria

There has been growing interest in how the appearance of lesions on clinical imaging can be utilised to accurately assess the effect of bevacizumab on tumour volume and how this appearance may correlate with other clinical end-points. In a small retrospective colorectal liver only metastasis (CRLM) patient cohort treated with bevacizumab and chemotherapy, Chun and colleagues demonstrated that novel morphological response criteria predicted more accurately for OS and pathological response than RECIST (Figure 2) [108]. This was subsequently validated in a larger patient population which included patients who were treated with and without bevacizumab [109]. Not only were the morphological response criteria superior to RECIST in predicting major pathological response and OS, further analyses confirmed that the morphological response criteria did not correlate with responses measured according to RECIST. Moreover, there was a significantly higher incidence of optimal responses (measured by morphological response criteria) in the patient cohort receiving bevacizumab with chemotherapy compared to the chemotherapy alone cohort [109]. These data suggest that (a) morphological response criteria and RECIST measure different biological parameters, and (b) the use of morphological response criteria represents a more sensitive tool for measuring tumour response and time-related endpoints of survival for bevacizumab. Similar findings were reported in a retrospective study of non-small cell lung cancer patients treated with bevacizumab and concomitant chemotherapy [110].

10.3 Pathological response criteria

Radiological assessment alone may not accurately reflect response to therapy because simple, unidimensional imaging parameters may overestimate or underestimate downstaging of tumour burden [111]. Furthermore, in the case of adding anti-angiogenic therapy to chemotherapy, although it has been suggested that proposed morphological imaging characteristics can accurately predict tumour response and clinical outcome, such scoring methods have not yet been validated for conventional use in clinical practice and may also be too subjective. Scoring of pathological response may therefore be a better alternative or perhaps an adjunct in assessing residual viable tumour. Moreover, in the case of preoperative chemotherapy or radiotherapy in settings such as rectal cancer and oesophageal cancer, pathological response has also been shown to correlate significantly to disease-free survival (DFS) and OS [112].

Several methodologies incorporating various parameters for scoring pathological response in resected CRLMs, treated with and without bevacizumab, have been proposed. It is still not clear from the current literature which of these classification methods may be superior.
Percentage viable tumour

Microscopic assessment of the percentage residual viable tumour on haematoxylin & eosin-stained sections of resected tissue has been employed as a predominant parameter in assessing the efficacy of different pre-operative chemotherapy regimens in tumour types such as oesophageal, gastric and rectal adenocarcinomas [113]. Based on this methodology, Ribero and colleagues modified this scoring system for application in CRLMs treated preoperatively, with or without bevacizumab [114]. A semi-quantitative estimation of the percentage area of residual viable tumour cells relative to total tumour surface area within each CRLM metastasis was made with the analysis of four tumour cell viability subsets (<25%, 25–49%, 50–75%, >75%). This retrospective study confirmed that the addition of bevacizumab to chemotherapy yielded an incrementally greater decrease in residual viable cells within these CRLMs in comparison to those treated with chemotherapy alone but no correlation with imaging, or other clinical end-points, was made [114].
50–75%, >75%). This retrospective study confirmed that the addition of bevacizumab to chemotherapy yielded an incrementally greater decrease in residual viable cells within these CRLMs in comparison to those treated with chemotherapy alone but no correlation with imaging, or other clinical end-points, was made [114].

10.3.2 Tumour regression grade (TRG)

Mandard and colleagues were one of the first to establish a five-point histological scoring system for pathological response. This was based on cytological and stromal changes on haematoxylin & eosin-stained sections of primary oesophageal squamous cell carcinomas treated with chemoradiotherapy prior to resection [115].

![Diagram of Tumour Regression Grade (TRG)](image)

Figure 3.

Tumour regression grade (TRG) scoring system as a component of measuring pathological response in treated CRLMs. (A–E) TRG as scored on haematoxylin and eosin sections of CRLMs based on the proportion of fibrosis to viable tumour cells. The five TRGs shown in this cartoon roughly illustrate the different proportions of fibrosis (fibrils) to tumour cells (black areas). (A) TRG1. There is an absence of viable tumour cells and large amounts of fibrosis. (B) TRG2. The presence of viable tumour cells is rare and they are scattered throughout the fibrosis. (C) TRG3. There is the presence of more residual tumour cells but fibrosis predominates. (D) TRG4. Residual cancer cells predominate over fibrosis. (E) TRG5. There are no signs of tumour regression. The percentage of the CRLM surface area occupied by necrosis is also incorporated as a parameter for pathological response (grey areas). 3 main pathological response groups: TRG1-2: major response (MjHR), TRG3: partial response (PHR), TRG4-5: no histological response (NHR).
Tumour response was scored according to five tumour regression grades (TRG1-5) based on the proportion of fibrosis to viable tumour cells. Later, this TRG scoring system was modified for its application in CRLMs receiving different chemotherapy backbones prior to liver resection (Figure 3A–E) [116]. Correlation analyses have demonstrated a significant association of major histological responders with increased survival.

Similar retrospective studies using the TRG in CRLMs were undertaken to see whether adding bevacizumab to chemotherapy would further increase pathological response rate, without necessarily increasing radiographic response rate, after liver resection. Indeed, several retrospective analyses demonstrated that a significantly increased percentage of patients treated with bevacizumab achieved a major pathological response and a significantly higher percentage area of tumour necrosis compared to chemotherapy-only treated patients [117]. Furthermore, the extent of pathological response correlated significantly with long-term-outcomes such as 3- and 5-year overall survival.

11. Mechanisms of resistance to anti-VEGF therapy

As is the case with most cancer therapeutics, drug resistance is considered to be a major factor that limits the efficacy of anti-angiogenic agents. Two ‘modes’ of resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy are currently recognised: intrinsic resistance, whereby the tumour fails to respond to the therapy from the outset, and acquired resistance, whereby the tumour develops means to evade the therapy after a period of response [21, 29, 118]. It is important to realise that resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy may be attributable to either the tumour cells themselves or due to interactions with their microenvironment. In terms of specific mechanisms mediating resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy, several have been proposed.

11.1 Vessel heterogeneity

Pre-clinical work has demonstrated that although anti-angiogenic agents thwart the growth of newly established tumour vessels, they are less effective against more mature blood vessels, indicating that they may be less dependent on VEGF (Figure 4A) [29]. This may be due to PDGF secretion mediating pericyte recruitment, allowing young vessels to mature and survive [119]. Co-inhibition of VEGF and PDGF has been shown to generate significant anti-angiogenic and anti-tumour effects than with VEGF inhibition alone [120].

11.2 Alternative pro-angiogenic signalling pathways

Alternative pro-angiogenic signalling pathways may allow tumour vascularisation to proceed when VEGF signalling is blocked (Figure 4B) [29]. A large body of preclinical work has identified candidate pathways that may provide such an alternative pro-angiogenic stimulus. These include fibroblast growth factors 1 and 2 (FGF1 and FGF2) [121], hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) [122] and epidermal growth factor (EGF) [123]. Most of the above preclinical work suggests that, by inhibiting both VEGF signalling and the candidate pathway, improvements in the anti-tumour efficacy can be seen. Therefore, targeting multiple pro-angiogenic pathways may prove more beneficial than employing agents that inhibit VEGF signalling alone.
11. Mechanisms of resistance to anti-VEGF therapy

Figure 3A–E

Pathological response to therapy, compared to chemotherapy-only treated patients [117]. Furthermore, the extent of pathological response and a significantly higher percentage area of tumour necrosis were correlated with long-term outcomes such as the rate of survival. Indeed, several retrospective analyses demonstrated that a significantly higher percentage area of tumour necrosis was obtained after liver resection. Whether adding bevacizumab to chemotherapy would further increase pathological response rates, without necessarily increasing radiographic response rates, after liver resection remains to be determined [116].

11.1 Vessel heterogeneity

Figure 4A

Proposed mechanisms of resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy. (A–F) The potential mechanisms that tumours can utilise to evade anti-angiogenic therapy. (A) Vessel heterogeneity. Tumours can contain vessels that are at different stages of maturation making some more sensitive to therapy than others. For example, here the top vessel is immature and is abolished by therapy (grey), whilst the bottom one is mature and remains viable (red). (B) Alternative pro-angiogenic signalling pathways can affect the susceptibility of vessels to therapy. Here, tumour cells (blue) have up-regulated an alternative pro-angiogenic growth factor to facilitate persistent blood vessel growth and survival despite VEGF blockade. (C) Stromal cells infiltrating into the tumour, such as myeloid progenitors (black) or fibroblasts (green), can also mediate resistance by releasing pro-angiogenic growth factors or by physically incorporating into vessels. (D) Tumour cell adaptation to stress. Subpopulations of cancer cells in the tumour (blue) can survive the hypoxic conditions and nutrient shortage resulting from vascular destruction by employing different adaptation mechanisms. (E) Alternative tumour vascularisation mechanisms. Apart from sprouting angiogenesis, tumours may utilise alternative mechanisms to recruit a vascular supply. In intussusceptive microvascular growth, new vessels are generated by the fission of pre-existing vessels. Glomeruloid angiogenesis is a process whereby tumour cells can create vascular-like structures themselves (blue) which are perfused as they become continuous with the host vasculature (red). In looping angiogenesis, contractile myofibroblasts (green) pull host vessels (red) out of the surrounding parenchymal tissue (pink region). Vessel co-option is a process whereby invading tumour cells engulf pre-existing vessels (red) in the normal parenchyma (pink region). (F) Selection of aggressive cells. Therapy alters the biology of the tumour cells in that they become more invasive and/or facilitate accelerated growth of metastases.

11.2 Alternative pro-angiogenic signalling pathways

Figure 4B

As is the case with most cancer therapeutics, drug resistance is considered to be a major factor that limits the efficacy of anti-angiogenic agents. Two ‘modes’ of resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy may be attributable to either the tumour cells themselves or due to interactions with their microenvironment. In terms of specific mechanisms mediating resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy, several have been proposed. These include fibroblast growth factors 1 and 2 (FGF1 and FGF2) [121], hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) [122] and epidermal growth factor (EGF) [123]. Most of the above preclinical work suggests that, by inhibiting both VEGF signalling and the candidate pathway, improvements in the anti-tumour efficacy can be seen. Therefore, targeting multiple pro-angiogenic pathways may prove more beneficial than employing agents that inhibit VEGF signalling alone [120].

Pre-clinical work has demonstrated that although anti-angiogenic agents thwart the growth of newly established tumour vessels, they are less effective against established, more mature blood vessels, indicating that they may be less dependent on VEGF for their survival. As is the case with most cancer therapeutics, drug resistance is considered to be a major factor that limits the efficacy of anti-angiogenic agents. Two ‘modes’ of resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy may be attributable to either the tumour cells themselves or due to interactions with their microenvironment. In terms of specific mechanisms mediating resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy, several have been proposed. These include fibroblast growth factors 1 and 2 (FGF1 and FGF2) [121], hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) [122] and epidermal growth factor (EGF) [123]. Most of the above preclinical work suggests that, by inhibiting both VEGF signalling and the candidate pathway, improvements in the anti-tumour efficacy can be seen. Therefore, targeting multiple pro-angiogenic pathways may prove more beneficial than employing agents that inhibit VEGF signalling alone [120].

As is the case with most cancer therapeutics, drug resistance is considered to be a major factor that limits the efficacy of anti-angiogenic agents. Two ‘modes’ of resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy may be attributable to either the tumour cells themselves or due to interactions with their microenvironment. In terms of specific mechanisms mediating resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy, several have been proposed. These include fibroblast growth factors 1 and 2 (FGF1 and FGF2) [121], hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) [122] and epidermal growth factor (EGF) [123]. Most of the above preclinical work suggests that, by inhibiting both VEGF signalling and the candidate pathway, improvements in the anti-tumour efficacy can be seen. Therefore, targeting multiple pro-angiogenic pathways may prove more beneficial than employing agents that inhibit VEGF signalling alone [120].
11.3 Role of stromal cells

Preclinical data suggest that cells in the tumour stroma, including fibroblasts, neutrophils, macrophages and myeloid progenitors, mediate resistance to VEGF-targeted agents (Figure 4C) [124]. For example, tumour-derived granulocyte-colony stimulating factor (G-CSF) mobilises myeloid cells from bone marrow, and is believed to promote pro-angiogenic Bv8 signalling by myeloid cells, which in tumours may confer resistance to anti-VEGF treatment [125]. Immunohistochemistry studies in human tumours showed expression of Bv8 in tumour-infiltrating neutrophils, which were seen in around 15% of breast carcinomas [126].

11.4 Tumour cell adaptation to stress

It is presumed that the inhibition of tumour vascularisation by anti-angiogenic agents will lead to a reduction in oxygen and nutrients available to the tumour thus causing retardation of tumour growth. However, tumours may develop a number of survival mechanisms enabling them to adapt to such hostile conditions (Figure 4D).

11.4.1 Metabolism

Some studies have suggested that anti-angiogenic therapy leads to metabolic reprogramming of tumour cells, allowing them to adapt to reduced vascular supply. Preclinical studies have demonstrated that treatment with anti-VEGF antibodies can lead to tumour cells relying on anaerobic metabolism and the glycolytic pathway for ATP [127]. Furthermore, the withdrawal of anti-angiogenic therapy has been shown to cause an increase in lipid metabolism, leading to a rebound in tumour growth [127].

11.4.2 Autophagy

Tumours treated with anti-angiogenic agents may also adapt to survive by activation of autophagy. Autophagy can occur in response to treatment related stressors such as hypoxia and occurs when organelles and proteins in the cell are degraded and recycled by lysosomes [128]. Autophagy-mediating molecules such as BNIIP3 have been identified in GBM tumour cells after exposure (a) to hypoxic conditions in vitro, (b) to bevacizumab therapy in vivo or (c) to bevacizumab therapy in human tumours [129]. Furthermore, a recent study has reported that when MDA-MB-231 breast cancer cells were treated with an agent that induced autophagy, they exhibited increased invasiveness [130].

11.4.3 Cancer stem cells (CSCs)

It is becoming clear that many solid tumours contain relatively rare subpopulations of cancer stem cells. These are clones of tumour cells that are able to sustain self-renewal and can tolerate hostile environments [131]. Furthermore, it has been proposed that hypoxia induced by anti-angiogenic therapy can (a) select for CSCs, and (b) maintain the niche that supports the survival of CSCs [132]. Conceivably, these persistent clones of CSCs may render the tumour more invasive and metastatic and may also lead to antiangiogenic therapy resistance [133].

11.4.4 Enhanced tumour aggressiveness

Anti-angiogenic therapy has been proposed to induce hypoxic tumour microenvironments, enhancing the aggressiveness of tumour cells (Figure 4F) [134]. This
may help explain why the response to anti-angiogenic therapy is often transient as anti-angiogenic agents can cause initial reductions in tumour burden and a prolonged PFS, but with minimal or no improvement in OS [118]. Anti-angiogenic agents have demonstrated an ability to select for more aggressive cancer cells and enhance tumour cell invasion, growth and metastasis [135]. Moreover, it is now well accepted that some GBM patients with tumours treated with bevacizumab show an increase in tumour invasiveness [136].

11.5 Alternative vascularisation mechanisms

Despite the dogma that tumours primarily employ VEGF-dependent sprouting angiogenesis, emerging evidence now exists for alternative tumour vascularisation mechanisms, including: intussusceptive microvascular growth (IMG) (sometimes known merely as ‘intussusception’), glomeruloid angiogenesis, vascular mimicry (also sometimes called ‘vasculogenic mimicry’), looping angiogenesis, and vessel co-option (also sometimes called ‘vascular co-option’) (Figure 4E) [21]. These mechanisms may occur by alternative signalling pathways that may not be inhibited by VEGF-targeted therapies.

11.5.1 Intussusception

Intussusception is a mechanism whereby pre-existing vessels split into two daughter vessels without the need for endothelial cell proliferation and sprouting (Figure 4E). It has been observed in embryonic development and within experimental tumours recovering from anti-angiogenic therapy and radiotherapy [137]. The molecular mechanisms that control this process are still not well understood.

11.5.2 Vascular mimicry

Vascular mimicry (VM) is a process observed in clinical and preclinical studies whereby tumour cells differentiate into vascular-like structures themselves [138] (Figure 4E). It has been shown that basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF) and VEGF, are incapable of inducing VM channels and networks in poorly aggressive melanoma cell lines, suggesting that VM channel formation maybe be independent of these classical pro-angiogenic growth factors [139]. However, further mechanistic detail is lacking.

11.5.3 Vessel co-option

Vessel co-option is the process whereby, when a tumour invades, existing local vessels become directly incorporated into the tumour (Figure 4E). Histopathological studies have indicated that colorectal and breast cancer liver metastases may utilise vessel co-option [140, 141].

Vessel co-option has been shown to mediate resistance to VEGF inhibitors in mouse models of melanoma metastasis to the brain and in mouse models of glioblastoma multiforme, and has been observed in glioblastoma patients who have progressed on anti-VEGF therapy [142–144]. Recently, it has been demonstrated that vessel co-option plays a role in mediating resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy in colorectal cancer liver metastases [145].

In tumour samples obtained from primary lung cancer patients, gene expression arrays have been utilised to identify pathways differentially expressed between angiogenic tumours and vessel co-opting tumours [146]. Stromal expression of thrombospondin-1 appeared to be up regulated in angiogenic tumours, whilst in
vessel co-option tumours, there was increased expression of genes involved in oxidative phosphorylation in primary [146]. Surprisingly, no differences in classic hypoxia or angiogenesis related genes were found between angiogenic and non-angiogenic tumours.

In a glioma rat model of breast cancer brain and lung metastasis, co-opted blood vessels were seen in early-stage tumours and these vessels were found to overexpress angiopoietin-2, a natural antagonist of angiopoietin-1 [147]. As these tumours grew to become more hypoxic, VEGF was upregulated at the hypoxic tumour periphery and stimulated angiogenesis [147]. These observations suggest that a transition from vessel co-option to angiogenesis, or vice versa, may be dependent on the relative expression of pro-angiogenic growth factors (angiopoietin-1, VEGF) and anti-angiogenic factors (angiopoietin-2).

Cell adhesion molecules have been implicated in facilitating the process of vessel co-option. In a preclinical brain metastasis model, Carbonell et al. demonstrated that the β1 integrin subunit in breast cancer and lymphoma cells facilitates (a) tumour cell adhesion to the vascular basement membrane of existing brain vessels, (b) tumour cell invasion and (c) the process of vessel co-option [148]. When the function of the β1 integrin subunit was blocked, adhesion to vessels was attenuated and brain metastasis colonies failed to become established and grow [148].

Furthermore, the L1 cell adhesion molecule (L1CAM) has been shown to be involved in vessel co-option in the brain [149]. The ability of cancer cells to co-opt blood vessels was suppressed when L1CAM expression was depleted using shRNA. Conversely, when L1CAM was overexpressed, tumour cells demonstrated enhanced adherence to the outer surface of vessels and tumour growth alongside them. Although such mechanisms are likely to be more specific for vessel co-option in the brain, similar mechanisms may be at work during vessel co-option at other anatomical sites.

12. Conclusion

Tumour vascularisation is modulated by the complex interplay of several endogenous factors and processes that can be up-regulated or downregulated, depending on the tumour microenvironment and the treatment pressures that are imposed on it. A multitude of studies have shown that the majority of solid tumours exhibit an overexpression of VEGF, one of the key drivers of sprouting angiogenesis. As a result, various anti-angiogenic therapies targeting VEGF or VEGFR have now been developed and are used conventionally in the clinic. Compellingly, recent pre-clinical and clinical studies using anti-angiogenic agents in combination with immunotherapies (e.g. ICI’s), have demonstrated a synergistic effect in reducing tumour growth. This highlights that there is promise, not only in incorporating anti-angiogenic therapy in the management of most cancers, but also in combining such agents with immunomodulatory agents.

However, as is the case with many cancer treatments, drug resistance can limit the efficacy of these agents. Trials of VEGF-targeted therapies in advanced malignancies have not consistently demonstrated beneficial outcomes in terms of tumour response and survival. Importantly, only a proportion of patients benefit from anti-angiogenic therapy, control of tumour growth is generally transient, there remains significant risk for therapeutic toxicity and we are still challenged by the burden of health costs.

Limited clinical outcomes with anti-angiogenic therapies are felt to be driven by either intrinsic or acquired resistance mechanisms, and several of these have now been proposed. In this chapter, we have reviewed the most commonly used anti-angiogenic agents in the clinic and have highlighted the spectrum of mechanisms
that may be involved in therapeutic resistance. However, despite the plethora of pre-clinical and clinical studies that have been undertaken, these mechanisms are yet to be entirely elucidated. Importantly, the clinically relevant mechanisms that mediate such resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy are poorly understood and we still do not have means to select patients who will benefit from these agents. Furthermore, there has been a rapid expansion in the development of multiple next generation anti-vascular agents, but there is still little clarity regarding important biological pathways that may affect their efficacy.

The data supporting the role of candidate biomarkers for response and resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies thus far have been generated from basic research, retrospective studies and limited prospective correlative studies. As such there remains a crucial need for substantial research of clinically relevant predictive biomarkers with the use of large, prospective randomised trials. This could also provide a platform for longitudinal and frequent biospecimen collection in order to further interrogate the mechanisms involved in tumour vascularisation and therapeutic resistance over time.

Author details

Sophia Frentzas¹,²*, Caroline Lum¹ and Ting-Yu Chen³

1 Department of Medical Oncology, Monash Health, Clayton, Victoria, Australia

2 Department of Oncology, Monash University, Clayton, Victoria, Australia

3 Faculty of Medicine, Nursing and Health Sciences, Monash University, Clayton, Victoria, Australia

*Address all correspondence to: sophia.frentzas@monash.edu

IntechOpen

© 2019 The Author(s). Licensee IntechOpen. This chapter is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.
References


[13] Lamalice L, Houle F, Huot J. Phosphorylation of Tyr1214 within VEGFR-2 triggers the recruitment of Nck and activation of Fyn leading to SAPK2/p38 activation and endothelial cell migration in response to VEGF. The Journal of Biological Chemistry. 2006;281(45):34009-34020


of the ARIES observational cohort study. Pharmacoepidemiology and Drug Safety. 2014;23(7):726-734


progression on platinum-based therapy (REVEL): A multicentre, double-blind, randomised phase 3 trial. The Lancet. 2014;384(9944):665-673


[64] Christensen JG. A preclinical review of sunitinib, a multitargeted receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor
with anti-angiogenic and antitumour activities. Annals of Oncology. 2007;18(Suppl 10):x3-x10


[77] Kamoun WS, Ley CD, Farrar CT, Duyverman AM, Lahdenranta J, Lacorre DA, et al. Edema control by cediranib, a vascular endothelial growth factor receptor-targeted kinase inhibitor, prolongs survival despite persistent brain tumor growth in


liver metastases, display a non-angiogenic growth pattern that preserves the stroma and lacks hypoxia. British Journal of Cancer. 2004;90(7):1429-1436


Chapter 3
The Influence of Microbial Metabolites in the Gastrointestinal Microenvironment on Anticancer Immunity
Silke Neumann, Estelle M. Peyroux, Matt J. Woodall, Nick J. Shields, Sarah L. Young and Sharon T. Pattison

Abstract
The gastrointestinal (GI) tumour microenvironment is characterised by its unique colonisation with bacteria that are estimated to match the total number of cells in our body. It is becoming increasingly clear that the microbiome and its metabolites are important orchestrators of local and systemic immune responses, anticancer immunity and the host response to cancer therapy. Apart from their role as an energy source, metabolites have been shown to modulate inflammation, immune cell function and cancer cell survival. The polarisation of immune cell subsets by microbial metabolites towards either pro- or antitumorigenic functions strongly affects cancer progression and outcomes. In this chapter, we will discuss the link between microbial metabolites in the GI tumour microenvironment, anticancer immune responses and cancer progression.

Keywords:
gastrointestinal tumour environment, host immune response, innate immunity, microbial metabolites, metabolism

1. Introduction
The GI tract is a complex ecosystem, populated by a large variety of bacteria, fungi and viruses that together form the intestinal microbiome. A surprising amount of local and systemic bodily functions are affected by the composition of the microbiome and its produced metabolites. This includes the generation of energy, metabolism of dietary components and synthesis of vitamins as well as regulation of immune responses, behaviour and mood. Perturbations of microbial populations, commonly referred to as dysbiosis, have been associated with a large number of diseases, such as inflammatory bowel disease [1], diabetes [2], obesity [3], autism [4], depression [5] and colorectal cancer [6, 7]. Understanding the reciprocal relationship between the microbiota and immunity has received great attention as it is becoming increasingly clear that inflammatory processes underlie many pathologies. The complexity of microbiome-immune interactions is staggering as not only the presence or absence of bacterial species shape immunity, but metabolites produced and modified by bacteria have a direct effect on the immune system's ability to react to infectious and non-communicable diseases [8].
Chapter 3

The Influence of Microbial Metabolites in the Gastrointestinal Microenvironment on Anticancer Immunity

Silke Neumann, Estelle M. Peyroux, Matt J. Woodall, Nick J. Shields, Sarah L. Young and Sharon T. Pattison

Abstract

The gastrointestinal (GI) tumour microenvironment is characterised by its unique colonisation with bacteria that are estimated to match the total number of cells in our body. It is becoming increasingly clear that the microbiome and its metabolites are important orchestrators of local and systemic immune responses, anticancer immunity and the host response to cancer therapy. Apart from their role as an energy source, metabolites have been shown to modulate inflammation, immune cell function and cancer cell survival. The polarisation of immune cell subsets by microbial metabolites towards either pro- or antitumorigenic functions strongly affects cancer progression and outcomes. In this chapter, we will discuss the link between microbial metabolites in the GI tumour microenvironment, anticancer immune responses and cancer progression.

Keywords: gastrointestinal tumour environment, host immune response, innate immunity, microbial metabolites, metabolism

1. Introduction

The GI tract is a complex ecosystem, populated by a large variety of bacteria, fungi and viruses that together form the intestinal microbiome. A surprising amount of local and systemic bodily functions are affected by the composition of the microbiome and its produced metabolites. This includes the generation of energy, metabolism of dietary components and synthesis of vitamins as well as regulation of immune responses, behaviour and mood. Perturbations of microbial populations, commonly referred to as dysbiosis, have been associated with a large number of diseases, such as inflammatory bowel disease [1], diabetes [2], obesity [3], autism [4], depression [5] and colorectal cancer [6, 7]. Understanding the reciprocal relationship between the microbiota and immunity has received great attention as it is becoming increasingly clear that inflammatory processes underlie many pathologies. The complexity of microbiome-immune interactions is staggering as not only the presence or absence of bacterial species shape immunity, but metabolites produced and modified by bacteria have a direct effect on the immune system’s ability to react to infectious and non-communicable diseases [8].
Microbial metabolites, as the sum of products modified and synthesised by microbiota, can be a useful tool to understand microbiota-driven immune modulation when analysis of bacterial lineages proves difficult. Diversity and abundance of microbial communities varies greatly amongst healthy individuals, whereas metabolic pathways are conserved and stable [9, 10]. Therefore, assessing changes of metabolic pathways and how they affect immunity may provide crucial insights into the role of the GI microenvironment in health and disease. Microbial metabolites are commonly divided into three categories, (1) metabolites produced by bacteria, derived from host products; (2) metabolites modified by bacteria, derived from host products; and (3) metabolites synthesised by bacteria directly.

In the following sections, we will briefly describe GI cancers and components of the GI tract that shape the tumour microenvironment. Furthermore, we will discuss the evidence for connecting changes in the microbiome and its metabolites with carcinogenesis and the role of bacterial metabolites in shaping immunity and in particular anticancer immunity.

2. The GI cancer microenvironment

2.1 The gastrointestinal tract

The gastrointestinal tract starts at the mouth, extends to the anus and includes the oesophagus, stomach, small intestine, large intestine, liver and pancreas. Its main functions are primarily the disruption and digestion of food, absorption of nutrients and elimination of waste products. With the diverse functions of the GI tract, it is not unsurprising that it has a number of diverse environments which are contributed to by various types of immune cells and the multiple bacteria that reside in the GI tract.

Movement of food down the GI tract is facilitated by muscular contractions. Much of the tube that makes up the GI tract is muscle lined to enable this to occur, with sphincters at particular junctures to enable control of food passage. The muscle layers are coated by a mucous membrane which varies depending on the function of that section of the GI tract.

The epithelium that lines the GI tract can be broadly divided into three subtypes, primarily based on their function. Squamous epithelium is found at the start (mouth and oesophagus) and end (anus) of the GI tract providing a protective covering. Secretory epithelium is found in the stomach. Absorptive epithelium is found in both the small and large intestines. The small intestine has numerous fingerlike projections, called villi, that increase the surface area to facilitate absorption of nutrients with interspersed crypts, or glands, which contain the stem cells that give rise to the epithelial cells. The absorptive epithelium of the large intestine is more closely packed with glands specialised for water absorption and mucus-secreting cells to lubricate the passage of faecal material down the GI tract.

The tube that forms the GI tract has a number of layers that lie between the outer muscular wall (the muscularis propria) and the innermost epithelium. The epithelium forms the innermost layer of the mucosa, which has two additional components, the lamina propria (composed of supportive connective tissue) and a thin layer of smooth muscle, the muscularis mucosae. Underneath the mucosa is the submucosa, which contains connective tissue, nerves and lymphatic and blood vessels. The submucosa is surrounded by the outer muscularis propria, the muscle layer whose contractions facilitate passage of material down the GI tract. The supporting tissue surrounding the GI tract is called the adventitia or serosa and contains major nerves and blood vessels.
The GI tract includes two large glands, the liver and pancreas. Both develop from the primitive foregut embryonically and have functions that contribute to digestion by generating digestive fluids. The liver produces bile, which can be stored and concentrated in the gallbladder. When lipids enter the duodenum, neuroendocrine cells of the duodenal mucosa are stimulated to release cholecystokinin-pancreozymin (CCK) causing contraction of the gallbladder releasing bile into the duodenum. Bile acids are emulsifying agents which aid in lipid digestion. Pancreatic secretions reach the duodenum via the pancreatic duct and contain a high content of alkaline bicarbonate ions which assist in neutralising the acidic fluid that has come from the stomach. The pancreas also produces a number of enzymes including trypsin, chymotrypsin, amylase, lipase and carboxypeptidases which are involved in the breakdown of proteins, carbohydrates and lipids.

2.2 Microbiota in the GI tract

Our lifestyle, including diet, exercise, childhood microbial exposure and the use of antibiotics strongly, influences the composition of our microbiota [9, 11–14]. Two phyla of bacteria dominate the human gut Bacteroidetes and Firmicutes. Over decades the ability to classify bacteria into their genus and species has evolved with technology resulting in numerous reclassifications. Bacteria can be additionally classified into subspecies on the basis of small but relevant differences within a species. Further classifications into strains or serovars, indicating variable immune antigens present on their surface, can be allocated outside nomenclature rules. This level of complexity demonstrates the purpose of studying microbial metabolites in the context of gut immunity, thereby avoiding the complexities of bacterial species, focusing instead on their metabolic output.

Epidemiological data initially made links between bacteria and cancer development. However, identifying the role of bacteria in cancer development has been challenging due to the importance of host factors in cancer susceptibility combined with the ubiquitous nature of bacteria and the prolonged period between introduction of a bacterium and development of overt cancer [15]. This is further complicated by environmental factors which are thought to play a much larger role than genetic makeup in determining the makeup of an individual’s microbiota [16].

While the knowledge of outcomes from bacterial interactions with human cells is growing, there is enormous potential for further discovery when accommodating other microbes that populate different levels of the gastrointestinal tract such as fungi and viruses [17].

2.3 Gastrointestinal cancers

Gastrointestinal (GI) cancers are as diverse as the environments of the GI tract and the various cell types found in the GI tract. Squamous cell carcinomas arise in the squamous epithelium of the oral cavity, oesophagus and anus. Those that arise in the oral cavity are considered head and neck cancers rather than GI cancers. Adenocarcinomas are cancers that arise from glandular epithelium and can arise in the oesophagus, stomach, small intestine, pancreas and large intestine. Other cancers that can arise from the GI tract include cholangiocarcinoma, with origin from bile duct cells; hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), originating from hepatocytes (liver cells); gastrointestinal stromal tumours, originating from the interstitial cells of Cajal which have a role in the control of peristaltic contractions [18]; and neuroendocrine cancers which can arise from neuroendocrine cells throughout the GI tract. Multiple studies examining these GI cancers have demonstrated diverse molecular alterations within cancers that arise from the same cell type in the same
organ of the GI tract, highlighting the multitude of malignancies that can arise in the GI tract [19–27].

Chronic inflammation and infection are intimately associated with the development of cancer, with 15% of global cancer cases in 2012 being attributed to a carcinogenic infection [28]. Examples from the GI tract include HCC with hepatitis B and C virus infections contributing to more than 70% of global HCC diagnoses in 2012 [28]. In gastric adenocarcinoma four molecular subtypes were described by The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) in 2014, one is characterised by Epstein-Barr virus positivity and shows extreme DNA hypermethylation [29]. Helicobacter pylori (H. pylori) is considered a class I carcinogen by the World Health Organization due to the association of chronic infection with the development of gastric adenocarcinoma and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) lymphoma, a form of B cell lymphoma in the stomach [30, 31]. The risk of developing gastric cancer with H. pylori is dependent on the virulence factors of the strain causing infection, other environmental factors and host genetics [32–34].

In colorectal cancer studies, Fusobacterium subspecies were consistently identified as being differentially present in tumour samples; however, these findings are still limited by small sample sizes [35]. A study of the microbiome in a hereditary form of CRC has implicated oncotoxins produced by co-colonisation with Bacteroides fragilis (B. fragilis) and Escherichia coli (E. coli) subspecies in mucosal biofilms. Further animal studies have revealed the bacterial synergy involved in carcinogenesis whereby the B. fragilis toxin increases expression of the pro-inflammatory cytokine interleukin (IL)-17 enabling the oncotoxin-producing E. coli to invade the mucosa inducing DNA damage in epithelial cells [36].

In addition to bacteria and viruses being implicated in carcinogenesis, parasitic infections have also been implicated in cancer development in the GI tract, with liver fluke infection, particularly Opisthorchis viverrini, being associated with the development of cholangiocarcinoma [37].

### 2.4 Inflammation in the GI tract

Acute inflammation is an integral part of the host defence against pathogens and tissue damage and is also required for the initiation of beneficial antitumour immunity [38, 39]. In contrast, it is ongoing ‘smouldering’ inflammation that contributes to tumour development, progression, invasion and metastasis [40]. Low-grade inflammation affects the function of immune cells and promotes an immune-suppressive, tumour-promoting phenotype [41, 42]. This in turn is associated with reduced immune surveillance and clearance of tumour cells by the immune system.

Chronic inflammation can be induced through a variety of mechanisms, including chronic infections [43], autoimmunity [44], metabolic disorders [45] and altered microbiota [46, 47]. In the GI tract in particular, the host immune system has to maintain a delicate balance, and pathogens and malignant cells need to be cleared, whereas normal flora has to be tolerated. Disruption of immune tolerance or dysbiosis may result in loss of epithelial barrier function and overstimulation of immune cells, leading to tissue damage and chronic inflammation.

Conditions associated with recurrent or chronic inflammation, such as inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), have been shown to contribute to the risk of developing small and large intestine cancers [48, 49]. Mechanistically, this has been related to increased stimulation of inflammation-promoting immune cells by altered microbiota [46]. As a result, pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines are secreted, attract further immune cells into the tissue and polarise them towards tumour-promoting functions [50–52]. Particularly the presence of pathogenic
T-cell subsets, induced by pro-inflammatory cytokines, has been shown to be a predictor of poor prognosis in colorectal cancer patients [53]. Chronic inflammation also contributes to the expansion of oncogenic bacteria thereby re-enforcing disease progression [54]. See Box 1 for an overview of the immune cell populations involved in intestinal antitumour immune responses.

**Dendritic cells**
DCs are innate immune cells that develop from myeloid precursors in the bone marrow. They are capable of detecting pathogens or tissue disturbances and initiate an inflammatory response. In the tumour microenvironment, they are thought to engulf dead tumour cells and debris and present fragments thereof to T cells, thus initiating anticancer immune responses.

**Macrophages**
Macrophages are antigen-presenting cells that arise from either circulating monocytes or embryonic progenitors that persist into adulthood, both giving rise to tissue-specific macrophage populations that are capable of self-renewal [186, 187]. Macrophages serve important functions in immunity, cancer, metabolism and tissue repair. Macrophages play an important role in the antitumour immune response but can also adopt a protumour phenotype in the tumour environment [188, 189].

**Cytotoxic T cells (CD8+ T cells)**
CTLs express the CD8 receptor and recognise antigens presented on the surface of antigen-presenting cells. Once primed by this encounter, CTLs are capable of recognising the same antigens and kill target cells expressing the antigen. Tumour-specific CTL responses are crucial for controlling tumour growth.

**Helper T cells (CD4+ T cells)**
Th cells express the CD4 receptor and support functions of innate and adaptive immune cells by secreting cytokines. Depending on the environment they encounter, Th cells develop into subsets with a wide range of functions [190].

Cytokines, such as IL-12, promote the development of Th1 cells, which are efficient at secreting IFN-γ and TNF-α, important cytokines for antitumour immunity. When naïve CD4+ T cells reside in an environment high in IL-6 and TGF-β, they develop into Th17 cells, which promote autoimmunity and are a negative prognostic marker for colorectal cancer [49]. Th cells can develop into immune-suppressive Tregs in the presence of TGF-β when expressing the transcription factor FOXP3.

**Mucosa-activated invariant T cells (MAIT cells)**
MAIT cells reside at mucosal surfaces in the lung and the intestine [163] and are widely distributed in tissue and the systemic blood circulation [164, 165]. They have innate immune cell features but also express a semi-invariant T-cell receptor, which can recognise antigens presented on a monomorphic MHC class I-related protein (MR1) expressed by antigen-presenting cells [166]. MAIT cells are first responders to a variety of infections caused by bacteria, fungi and viruses through detection of microbial B vitamin antigens.

**Innate lymphoid cells (ILCs)**
ILCs stem from the lymphoid lineage but have innate immune cell characteristics [109]. They are quick responders and contribute to elimination of pathogens and tissue homeostasis by producing a variety of cytokines. Based on their specific cytokine secretion, ILCs are grouped into different classes that resemble their T-cell counterparts, for example, group 3 ILCs (ILC3s) resemble Th17 cells and produce IL-17 and IL-22 [109].

**Box 1. Overview of immune cell populations involved in intestinal antitumour immune responses.**

3. Microbial metabolites that shape antitumour immunity

Metabolites produced or modified by bacteria significantly impact health and disease by acting locally on GI tract cells but can also have systemic effects by influencing the function and activation states of immune cells. The ‘metabolome’ constitutes the sum of small molecules produced by a biological system and is a powerful approach to explore the current condition of that system [55]. Metabolomics refers to the analysis of metabolites using techniques, such as mass spectrometry, nuclear magnetic resonance analysis, high-performance liquid chromatography and gas chromatography coupled with mass spectrometry. Obtained peak patterns can be compared against spectral databases for identification of metabolites. Metabolomics can be combined with metagenomics, investigating the genetic material of the entire community, and metatranscriptomics, exploring which genes are expressed, to increase our understanding of microbiomes. The benefits, disadvantages and technical challenges of these omics techniques are reviewed extensively elsewhere [56–59].
In the following sections, we will discuss the impact of microbial metabolites on immune cell function, focusing on how these metabolites shape the immune response. The anatomical components of the intestinal immune system including immune and epithelial cell populations and the mechanisms employed by these cell populations to discriminate between commensal and pathogenic bacteria have been reviewed extensively recently [60–66].

3.1 Metabolites produced by bacteria from dietary components

3.1.1 Short-chain fatty acids

Short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs) are 1–6 carbon volatile fatty acids which can either be in straight or branched chain conformation [67]. They are end products of fermentation of indigestible carbohydrates such as starch and fibre, by anaerobic microbiota in the caecum and large intestine [68]. SCFAs are the most abundant metabolite in the colon and consist almost entirely of acetate (C2), propionate (C3) and butyrate (C4) [69]. Acetate is the most common SCFA (60% of total SCFAs) in the colon and can also reach the systemic circulation after absorption from the GI tract. Propionate and butyrate make up roughly 20% of the SCFAs in faeces each [68, 70]. Propionate is mainly metabolised in the liver after draining into the portal vein after absorption from the gut mucosa, while butyrate is the preferred energy source of colonocytes and is digested locally [71].

SCFAs affect host physiology and pathology through a multitude of local and systemic mechanisms of action (Figure 1). In the GI tract, they act through binding to transmembrane G protein-coupled receptors (GPRs) and diffusion into epithelial and immune cells where they modify post-translational gene expression and function as energy source.

GPRs implicated in SCFA signalling are free fatty acid receptors GPR41, GPR43 and GPR109a. The SCFAs acetate, propionate and butyrate have differing selectivity for these receptors with all three binding to GPR43, expressed on the GI epithelium and immune cells [72, 73]. Propionate and butyrate bind to GPR41, expressed by lamina propria cells in the large intestine, immune cells and cells of the peripheral nervous system [72]. Butyrate has also been found to ligate GPR109a expressed by large intestinal epithelium and certain subsets of immune cells [73].

Activation of the GPRs leads to changes in intracellular potassium concentrations [K⁺], which directly activate intracellular danger-sensing molecular complexes, called inflammasomes. Integral components of inflammasomes are Nod-like receptors, which are cytosolic pattern recognition receptors (PRRs). Particularly changes in the NLRP3 and NLRP6 inflammasomes (containing Nod-like receptors 3 and 6, respectively) have been implicated in exacerbating intestinal inflammation [74–76]. Inflammasome complexes can be activated through a two-step process. The first signal is considered the ‘priming signal’, which induces nuclear factor (NF)-κB-mediated transcription of inflammasome components and pro-IL-1β and IL-18 in epithelial and immune cells [77]. The second signal leads to the assembly of the inflammasome complex and caspase-1-dependent processing of pro-IL-1β and IL-18 into their biologically active forms.

IL-1β and IL-18 are important signalling molecules for gut homeostasis and immune effector function. IL-1β can have pro- and anti-homeostatic functions, whereas IL-18 is generally regarded as a crucial cytokine for maintaining gut barrier integrity and a healthy microbiome composition. A reduction in IL-18 secretion has been found to be associated with a shift in microbiota towards the expansion of Bacteroidetes, which promote colonic inflammation and carcinogenesis in mouse models [46, 76]. This aligns with findings that describe a decreased
expression of NLRP6 in gastric cancer, correlated with a reduced survival time in patients [78]. When the NLRP6 inflammasome was overexpressed, gastric cancer cell proliferation and development were inhibited, and migration and invasion of cancer cells were decreased. Furthermore, NLRP6 activity has been linked with intact epithelial barrier function and prevention of colorectal cancer
butyrate and propionate, but not acetate, have been shown to reduce production of kill antigen specifically and react swiftly in the case of a second encounter. SCFAs, mental for tissue homeostasis if not regulated tightly. Th cells also facilitate the full pro-inflammatory cytokines by DCs, such as IL-6, IL-12 and IL-23 in particular, populations of effector Th cells, directed by cytokines from DCs. Secretion of in small fragments to T helper (Th) cells. These cells, in turn, differentiate into

dendritic cells (DCs) and T cells [47], yet cells involved in containing inflammation immune cells have to remain passive when challenged with host microbiota and on immune cell populations in the gut. In order to retain intestinal homeostasis, accumulation of butyrate and HDAC inhibition [95, 96].

SCFAs, particularly butyric acid and β-hydroxybutyrate, stimulate NLRP3 and NLRP6 inflammasomes through binding to GPR43 and GPR109a, leading to increased production of IL-1β and IL-18 [87, 88]. Subsequently it was shown that dietary supplementation with sodium butyrate or increased consumption of dietary fibre protected mice against colitis [87] and colonic carcinogenesis [89] through production of IL-18 and promotion of gut homeostasis. Interestingly, even though activation of the NLRP3 inflammasome was mediated via activation of GPRs, stimulation of GPRs with synthetic agonists did not recapitulate these findings, indicating that SCFAs must act on additional targets that influence cytokine secretion [90].

A prominent target of SCFAs is histone deacetylases (HDAC) and acetyltransferases (HAT), which regulate gene expression by allowing or preventing access of the transcription machinery to DNA. HDAC inhibitors have been used in cancer therapy for their ability to induce cancer cell death, reduce proliferation and increase immunogenicity of cancer cells as well as stimulate anticancer immune function [91–93]. Cancer cells utilise glucose as their primary energy source, and thus SCFAs, such as butyrate, accumulate and due to increased concentration inhibit HDAC activity [94]. In contrast, healthy cells are capable of metabolising butyrate into small molecules required for energy generation, thereby preventing accumulation of butyrate and HDAC inhibition [95, 96].

Interestingly, a similar mechanism may explain the diverging effects of butyrate on immune cell populations in the gut. In order to retain intestinal homeostasis, immune cells have to remain passive when challenged with host microbiota and food antigens yet remain responsive to fight pathogenic bacteria. This diversity of function is supported by SCFAs that induce a hypo-responsive state in immune cell populations, which are capable of promoting inflammation, such as macrophages, dendritic cells (DCs) and T cells [47], yet cells involved in containing inflammation are induced and expanded by SCFAs [97, 98].

DCs and macrophages are professional antigen-presenting cells, highly proficient at scanning the environment for invaders or tissue disturbances. Once detected, pathogens or abnormal cells are engulfed, processed and presented in small fragments to T helper (Th) cells. These cells, in turn, differentiate into populations of effector Th cells, directed by cytokines from DCs. Secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines by DCs, such as IL-6, IL-12 and IL-23 in particular, supports the polarisation of Th cells towards effector and inflammatory subsets Th1 and Th17, respectively. This is important for removal of pathogens but can be detrimental for tissue homeostasis if not regulated tightly. Th cells also facilitate the full activation and memory development of cytotoxic T cells (CTLs), which are able to kill antigen specifically and react swiftly in the case of a second encounter. SCFAs, butyrate and propionate, but not acetate, have been shown to reduce production of pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-12 and IL-23, and chemokines in DCs and
also impair the maturation of DCs [90, 99, 100]. Changes in cytokine secretion are associated with impaired ability of DCs to prime CTLs [101], reduced polarisation of Th-cell subsets towards effector and inflammatory subsets and induction of regulatory T cells (Tregs) [102].

Regulatory T cells have an important role in control of inflammation. Tissue inflammation and autoimmunity are promoted if Tregs are not present or dysfunctional. In contrast to many other cancers where Tregs are thought to suppress effective antitumour immunity, GI cancer patients benefit from the presence of Tregs in the tumour microenvironment [103]. Tregs limit inflammatory processes, induce tolerence towards food and microbial antigens and promote stem cell renewal in the intestine through a variety of mechanisms. This includes production of anti-inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-10 and transforming growth factor beta (TGF-β), expression of inhibitory molecules and restriction of nutrients required by effector T cells, particularly Th1 and Th17 cells [64, 104–106].

Interestingly, due to the high rates of glycolysis in effector and pro-inflammatory cells, such as CTLs, Th1 and Th17 subsets, butyrate accumulates in these cells, leading to an inhibitory effect mediated by both HDAC inhibition and binding to GPR109a [90, 93, 102]. In contrast, anti-inflammatory cells, such as Tregs, which rely on oxidative phosphorylation can process butyrate for energy consumption, circumventing these effects [107]. It has been demonstrated comprehensively that SCFAs drive Treg development via HDAC inhibition and GPR activation in the intestine and periphery, thereby protecting mice against colonic inflammation, colitis and colorectal cancer [97, 98, 106, 108].

3.1.2 Indole derivatives

Indoles are aromatic heterocyclic compounds, produced by gut bacteria from the degradation of tryptophan via several enzymes [109]. Tryptophan is an essential amino acid, which cannot be produced by the host and is taken up in the diet. Dietary tryptophan can be metabolised by microbiota and host cells to indole derivatives that have important immune modulatory functions in the gut [110]. Indole derivatives, such as kynurenines, are ligands for the aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AHR), an intracellular ligand-activated transcription factor with important roles in detecting environmental changes and alerting cells to them. Microbial AHR ligands are thought to play an important role in maintaining intestinal homeostasis and limiting inflammation [111]. The importance of AHR signalling has been demonstrated in AHR−/− mice where clearance of pathogenic bacteria was impaired while intestinal inflammation was elevated and associated with an increased risk of developing colitis [112–114].

Mechanistically, bacterial AHR ligands have been shown to induce the production of IL-22 in innate lymphoid cells (ILCs), which promotes diversity of gut microbiota and protects mucosal barrier functions [115, 116]. ILCs stem from the lymphoid lineage but have innate immune cell characteristics [117]. They are quick responders and contribute to elimination of pathogens and tissue homeostasis by producing a variety of cytokines. Based on their specific cytokine secretion, ILCs are grouped into different classes that resemble their T-cell counterparts, for example, group 3 ILCs (ICL3s) resemble Th17 cells and produce IL-17 and IL-22 [117]. Even though production of IL-22 by ILC3s is vital for mucosal homeostasis, elevated levels of ILC3s and increased production of IL-17 have been associated with IBD pathology [118, 119]. Furthermore, it has been found that IL-22 contributes to tumorigenesis in the colon when elevated chronically. This was mediated via an inflammasome-dependent reduction of IL-22 binding protein and chronic elevated IL-22 levels [50, 51].
Genetic induction of constitutively active AHR signalling in mouse models has been found to be associated with stomach and liver cancer development [120, 121], whereas the absence of AHR in AHR-/- mice protected from prostate cancer [122]. As AHR is crucially involved in early development, maintenance of stem cells and cell differentiation, it is difficult to discern if stable genetic induction or ablation of these signalling pathways may promote carcinogenesis directly or through disturbances in early development.

### 3.1.3 Polyamines

Polyamines are small polycationic molecules, derived either from the diet or synthesised by gut bacteria or host cells [123]. While they are found in almost all living cells, the method of production in mammalian and bacterial cells differs. Intestinal bacteria use inducible or constitutive forms of amino acid decarboxylase enzymes in order to produce polyamines with arginine as a precursor. Mammalian synthesis involves a series of steps to convert arginine to polyamines, with ornithine decarboxylase being the rate-limiting enzyme. Putrescine, spermidine and spermine are the major polyamines secreted by both the gut microbiota and mammalian cells and have important immune modulatory functions [124].

Along with other polyamines, spermine directly regulates cells in the innate arm of the immune system and has an anti-inflammatory effect. Spermine inhibits lipopolysaccharide-induced expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines in monocytes and macrophages [125]. In macrophages, spermine is able to increase the expression of IL-10 and suppress production of inflammatory cytokines such as IFN-γ [126]. These functions were shown to have anti-inflammatory and protective effects in animal models of local and systemic inflammation [127].

Conversely, spermine inhibits the activation of the NLRP6 inflammasome and reduces the amount of IL-1β and IL-18 released. This is counteracted by taurine, another microbial metabolite, which is discussed below. The inhibitory effect of spermine on NLRP6 activity may be counteracted by the role polyamines play in maintaining the gut epithelial lining. Many studies have found that intestinal mucosal repair is associated with an increase in levels of spermine, spermidine and putrescine [128]. Furthermore, when the synthesis of polyamines is blocked, migration and proliferation of intestinal epithelial cells to the site of injury as well as in regular turnover of mucosal cells are significantly reduced. Polyamines promote the transcription of E-cadherin, which is important for the formation of tight junctions. In this regard, they play a role in stabilising the gut epithelium, so it is able to act as a barrier between the external and internal environment [128].

### 3.2 Metabolites modified by bacteria, derived from host products

#### 3.2.1 Bile acids and derivatives

Bile acids are physiological surfactants, produced in the liver and secreted into the duodenum or stored in the gall bladder. Bile acid molecules contain a hydrophobic hemisphere and a hydrophilic one, enabling them to associate around dietary fats and fat-soluble vitamins into micelles [129]. This promotes the breakdown and absorption of these molecules in the hydrophilic environment of the GI tract [130]. Approximately 95% of bile acids are reabsorbed via active transport by the apical sodium-dependent bile acid transporter in the ileum of the small intestine [131]. Microbial bile salt hydrolases catalyse the hydrolysis of amide bond linkage in bile acids, releasing an unconjugated bile acid. The de-conjugation of bile acids causes the release of glycine and taurine, which can then be used for further metabolism and growth.
Bile acids modulate innate immune cell function by inhibiting NF-κB activity, resulting in reduced production of pro-inflammatory cytokines and molecules (TNF-α, IL-1β, IL-6, IL-12, cyclooxygenase-1 and cyclooxygenase-2, and inducible nitric oxide synthase) in stimulated monocytes, macrophages, DCs and intestinal epithelial cells [132–135]. In human macrophages, administration of bile acids leads to increased production of IL-10 and a decrease in phagocytosis [136]. The reduction in pro-inflammatory cytokines combined with the increase in anti-inflammatory cytokine production induces the development, recruitment and expansion of Tregs in the colon. Together, the properties of bile acids improve barrier integrity and outcomes in mouse models of experimental colitis, which lead to the development of inflammatory bowel disease and colorectal cancer [133]. The effects occur via bile acid-mediated activation of the farnesoid X receptor (FXR), a ligand-activated nuclear receptor, and the G protein-coupled bile acid receptor 1 (GPBAR1). These receptors also play a crucial role in bile acid-induced inhibition of the NLRP3 inflammasome, which is associated with reduced levels of secreted IL-1β and IL-18 [137, 138].

In contrast to primary bile acids, the bile acid-derivative taurine stimulates NLRP6 inflammasome activity, leading to increased production of IL-18 [139]. Levy et al. found high taurine and associated IL-18 concentrations maintained and restored functional microbiota typically present in healthy flora.

### 3.3 Metabolites synthesised by bacteria directly

Microbiota are able to synthesise metabolites that are either unique to prokaryotic organisms, such as capsule polysaccharides and certain vitamins, or that can also be produced by host cells, for example, adenosine triphosphate (ATP).

#### 3.3.1 ATP

In addition to its role as universal energy source, ATP is an important signalling molecule that directly impacts immune cell function when released into the extracellular space. ATP is not only produced by living organisms but has been found to be secreted by a variety of commensal and pathogenic bacteria [140, 141]. Generally, increased levels of ATP are produced and secreted by host cells under inflammatory stress conditions and injury, often associated with inflammatory cell death [142]. Furthermore, the tumour microenvironment has high concentrations of extracellular ATP, at least partly induced by hypoxia, an activator of ATP secretion, and necrotic cell death [143, 144]. The chronic presence of ATP in the tumour microenvironment supports cancer cell proliferation, survival and metastasis as reviewed elsewhere [144]. In the immune context, most of the actions of ATP have been described to be pro-inflammatory; however, its hydrolysis product adenosine has immune-suppressive functions.

Host-, tumour- and microbial-derived ATP binds to purinergic-type receptor P2, while adenosine, the downstream product of hydrolysed ATP, binds to P1 receptors [144]. Purinergic P2 receptors are expressed highly by immune cells, and ATP exerts most of its pro-inflammatory effects through binding to P2X(1–7) ion channels and P2Y(1, 4, 6, 11–14) metabotropic purinergic receptors [145]. Activation of purinergic receptor P2X7 by ATP increases intracellular potassium and calcium concentrations [146]. Together with a priming signal, ATP is an important inducer of NLRP3 inflammasome activity [147]. As discussed previously, activation of the NLRP3 inflammasome and the subsequent secretion of IL-1β and IL-18 have important roles in shaping the magnitude of inflammatory responses, gut homeostasis and barrier function and have a controversial role in tumour progression [86].
Besides its role as inflammasome activator, ATP modulates migration of innate and adaptive immune cell subsets [148]. After release of ATP into the extracellular space, innate immune cells such as monocytes, mature DCs, neutrophils, macrophages and microglia are mobilised via activation of P2X and P2Y receptors and migrate to the source of the high ATP concentration. This migratory response is further amplified through autocrine activation of pannexin 1 channels in the membrane of innate immune cells [149–153]. Interestingly, ATP has been shown to affect migration of CD4+ T-cell subsets differently, depending on their function and activation status. While activated CD4+ T cells respond to high ATP concentrations and stimulation of P2X7 and P2X4 receptors with induction of apoptosis, immune-suppressive Tregs increase proliferation and migration via their P2Y2 receptor [154].

In the context of intestinal inflammation and carcinogenesis, ATP drives the polarisation of CD4+ T cells towards IL-17-producing CD4+ T cells, associated with a higher susceptibility to develop colitis and exacerbation of existing colitis in experimental mouse models [155, 156]. A Th17 signature in colorectal cancer patients is associated with disease progression and worse outcomes [53]. Polymorphism of the ATP-converting enzyme CD39 (hydrolysis of ATP to adenosine diphosphate (ADP)) in IBD patients and increased expression of P2X7 receptors in the inflamed epithelium of Crohn’s patients have been found, suggesting another role of ATP in disease pathology [156, 157].

ATP is hydrolysed by CD39 and CD73 to adenosine, which have been widely investigated and reviewed for their immune-suppressive functions in the tumour environment [144, 151, 152, 158]. Therapeutic inhibition of ATP and adenosine receptors as well as targeting of CD39 and CD73, alone and in combination with traditional chemotherapy, has shown great promise to prevent tumour growth by overturning adenosine-induced immune suppression [159–163]. However, recent evidence demonstrates that extracellular ATP is required for the formation of long-term, antigen-specific CTL responses, which are crucial for immunological memory [164]. It remains to be determined if therapeutic targeting of purinergic receptors and conversion enzymes affects development of immunological memory in cancer, which is desirable to prevent cancer occurrence.

### 3.3.2 Vitamins

Humans lack the ability to produce most essential vitamins and rely on vitamins to be supplied with the diet and produced by gut bacteria. Microbiota are able to synthesise vitamin K and a large number of B vitamins, such as folate (vitamin B9), riboflavin (vitamin B2), pyridoxine (vitamin B6), cobalamin (vitamin B12) and methionine [165]. B vitamins have achieved great attention for their cancer-preventing properties, with folate being the most investigated B vitamin in the cancer context [166]. The cancer-preventing mechanisms have been attributed to the role of B vitamins as cofactors in metabolic processes related to energy generation and gene regulation [166, 167]. Folate (B9) and pyridoxine (B6) have also been found to modulate intestinal immunity by increasing CD4+ T-cell proliferation, trafficking and survival of Treg subsets and NK cell cytotoxicity [168–170].

Interestingly, bacteria that synthesise vitamins B2 and B9 are recognised by mucosa-activated invariant T (MAIT) cells. MAIT cells reside at mucosal surfaces in the lung and the intestine [171] and are also widely distributed in tissue and the systemic blood circulation [172, 173]. They have innate immune cell features but also express a semi-invariant T-cell receptor, which can recognise antigens presented on a monomorphic MHC class 1-related protein (MR1) expressed by
antigen-presenting cells [174]. MAIT cells are first responders to a variety of infections caused by bacteria, fungi and viruses through detection of microbial B vitamin antigens.

Upon activation, MAIT cells are able to proliferate and produce cytotoxic molecules, capable of destroying infected cells displaying microbial B vitamin antigens on their MR1 protein [175–177]. Furthermore, MAIT cells produce immune modulatory cytokines, including IFN-γ, IL-2, IL-17, IL-10 and TNF-α [178]. While IFN-γ production is highly desirable to promote antitumour immunity, an IL-17 signature has been found to be associated with worse outcomes in CRC patients [53]. Numbers of MAIT cells decrease in the peripheral circulation but accumulate in intestinal tumours [179, 180]. Several groups report a diminished ability of tumour-infiltrating MAIT cells to produce IFN-γ combined with increased secretion of IL-17 [180, 181]. Even though it appears that MAIT cells may develop a tumour-promoting phenotype in the tumour microenvironment and thus contribute to cancer progression, further studies are needed to elucidate the role of these recently discovered cells.

It is tempting to speculate that MAIT cells may impact intestinal cancer development and progression through recognition of B vitamin antigens produced by dysbiotic and carcinogenic bacteria. Since MAIT cells can be activated or inhibited depending on the B vitamin antigen presented on MR1 proteins, MAIT cells have been suggested as attractive targets for cancer immunotherapy [182]. This is in part related to their potential to be targeted in combination with chemotherapy, due to the expression of drug resistance proteins that allows their survival and activation during and post-chemotherapy [172].

### 3.3.3 Bacterial polysaccharides

Commensal bacteria contribute to intestinal homeostasis through production of capsular polysaccharides. Polysaccharide A (PSA), the most studied bacterial polysaccharide, is produced by *B. fragilis* and plays an important role in regulating intestinal inflammation. Exogenous administration or bacterial production of PSA can prevent the development of experimental colitis by activating Treg and inhibiting Th17 responses [183–185]. This is mediated by PSA binding to PRRs expressed by DCs, which in turn secrete IL-10 that promotes the development and activation of Tregs. Furthermore, PSA influences the polarisation of Th subsets towards IFN-γ-producing Th cells, an important effector population for anticancer immunity. *B. fragilis* are not the only commensals that regulate inflammation; many other strains, for example, a large number of *Clostridium strains* [186], have been shown to have anti-inflammatory functions. This highlights the fact that the sum of commensals and their metabolites, rather than a defined strain or metabolite, shapes the functionality of the immune system by impacting the polarisation of immune subsets, crucial for clearance of diseases.

### 4. Conclusions

The link between microbiome disturbances and the development of inflammatory diseases highlights the importance of studying the effects of microbes and their metabolites on immune cell function. Deciphering the effects of microbial metabolites on the immune system in a highly dynamic organ system, such as the GI tract, is inherently difficult. The actions of individual metabolites need to be considered before the complex interplay of microbes, metabolites and cellular components, such as epithelial and immune cells can be investigated. The GI
tumour microenvironment is unique in that immunological tolerance is required to maintain a healthy intestinal environment, including maintenance of the “normal” microbiome, yet the presence of regulatory immune cells may impede antitumour immune responses and promote carcinogenesis.

There is increasing evidence from preclinical mouse model systems and human studies that GI tract microbiota, such as *B. fragilis*, *Bifidobacterium*, *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii* and *Akkermansia muciniphila*, can directly influence response to treatment including immunotherapies and survival in some malignancies [187–193]. This effect is potentially mediated by bacteria stimulating activation of innate immune cells and downstream polarisation of Th-cell subsets towards Th1 cells [194]. The species and diversity of bacterium identified as influencing treatment response and survival vary, likely reflecting the complexity of the interactions involved, the diverse malignancies and populations within which those malignancies had arisen, and the number of bacterial species that have immunomodulatory effects mediated through the GI tract.

The influence of infections on initiation and promotion of cancer has been long recognised, but our understanding of the complex network of interactions between the host, the microbiome, the genetics of both the host and microbiome and the metabolome remains superficial. These interactions are not static, which, with the diversity of the GI tract environment, add to the challenge of deciphering what microbial species may be influencing the immune response in a tumour-promoting or tumour-suppressive manner. The complexity of microbial species and indeed the complexity of immune cells and their function mean that practically assaying and identifying individual species of bacteria, or subsets of immune cells, clinically in a prognostic or predictive sense is challenging. The more readily measureable microbial metabolome may provide a more clinically accessible read-out of this interaction. The wide-ranging impact that products of microbial metabolism have on immune cell function and polarity and therefore anticancer immunity has been underappreciated to this point. A greater understanding of how microbial metabolites influence the GI tumour microenvironment has the potential to expand therapeutic options and improve survival of patients with GI cancers.

**Conflict of interest**

The authors declare no conflict of interest.
Current Cancer Treatment

The tumor microenvironment is unique in that immunological tolerance is required to maintain a healthy intestinal environment, including maintenance of the "normal" microbiome, yet the presence of regulatory immune cells may impede antitumor immune responses and promote carcinogenesis. There is increasing evidence from preclinical mouse model systems and human studies that GI tract microbiota, such as *B. fragilis*, *Bifidobacterium*, *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii* and *Akkermansia muciniphila*, can directly influence response to treatment including immunotherapies and survival in some malignancies [187–193]. This effect is potentially mediated by bacteria stimulating activation of innate immune cells and downstream polarisation of Th-cell subsets towards Th1 cells [194]. The species and diversity of bacterium identified as influencing treatment response and survival vary, likely reflecting the complexity of the interactions involved, the diverse malignancies and populations within which those malignancies had arisen, and the number of bacterial species that have immunomodulatory effects mediated through the GI tract.

The influence of infections on initiation and promotion of cancer has been long recognised, but our understanding of the complex network of interactions between the host, the microbiome, the genetics of both the host and microbiome and the metabolome remains superficial. These interactions are not static, which, with the diversity of the GI tract environment, add to the challenge of deciphering what microbial species may be influencing the immune response in a tumor-promoting or tumor-suppressive manner. The complexity of microbial species and indeed the complexity of immune cells and their function mean that practically assaying and identifying individual species of bacteria, or subsets of immune cells, clinically in a prognostic or predictive sense is challenging. The more readily measureable microbial metabolome may provide a more clinically accessible read-out of this interaction. The wide-ranging impact that products of microbial metabolism have on immune cell function and polarity and therefore anticancer immunity has been underappreciated to this point. A greater understanding of how microbial metabolites influence the GI tumor microenvironment has the potential to expand therapeutic options and improve survival of patients with GI cancers.

Conflict of interest

The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Author details

Silke Neumann¹, Estelle M. Peyroux¹, Matt J. Woodall¹, Nick J. Shields¹, Sarah L. Young¹ and Sharon T. Pattison²*

1 Department of Pathology, Dunedin School of Medicine, University of Otago, Dunedin, New Zealand

2 Department of Medicine, Dunedin School of Medicine, University of Otago, Dunedin, New Zealand

*Address all correspondence to: sharon.pattison@otago.ac.nz

IntechOpen

© 2019 The Author(s). Licensee IntechOpen. This chapter is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.
References


Izcue A et al. Regulatory T cells suppress systemic and mucosal immune activation to control intestinal inflammation. Immunological Reviews. 2006;212:256-271


Stagg AJ. Intestinal dendritic cells in health and gut inflammation. Frontiers in Immunology. 2018;9:2883


Hornung V et al. Silica crystals and aluminum salts activate the NALP3 inflammasome through phagosomal destabilization. Nature Immunology. 2008;9(8):847-856


[113] Shi LZ et al. The aryl hydrocarbon receptor is required for optimal resistance to listeria monocytogenes infection in mice. The Journal of Immunology. 2007;179(10):6952-6962


[149] Saez PJ et al. ATP promotes the fast migration of dendritic cells through the activity of pannexin 1 channels and P2X7 receptors. Science Signaling. 2017;10(506). pii: eaah7107


[151] Junger WG. Immune cell regulation by autocrine purinergic signalling.
Inflammatory Bowel Diseases.


[156] Friedman DJ et al. CD39 deletion exacerbates experimental murine colitis and human polymorphisms increase susceptibility to inflammatory bowel disease. PNAS. 2009;106(39):16788-16793


[159] Stagg J et al. CD73-deficient mice have increased antitumor immunity and are resistant to experimental metastasis. Cancer Research. 2011;71(8):2892-2900


[177] Kurioka A et al. MAIT cells are licensed through granzyme exchange to kill bacterially sensitized targets. Mucosal Immunology. 2014;8:429


Dendritic Cells and Their Roles in Anti-Tumour Immunity

Ee Shan Pang, Christophe Macri, Timothy Patton, Mariam Bafit and Meredith O’Keeffe

Abstract

Dendritic cells are rare cells found in blood and throughout all organs of the body as resident or migrating cell populations. Dendritic cells sense danger signals of pathogens and host cell stress through pattern receptors expressed on the cell surface and within organelles of the cell. Ligation of these receptors leads to activation and production of many different chemokines, cytokines and interferons. Key to the function of dendritic cells is their potent capacity to present antigen and activate naïve T cells. These qualities, potent antigen presentation and cytokine production together allow the dendritic cells to be at the forefront of danger responses, linking innate and adaptive immunity. Research over the last 20 years has clarified a role of dendritic cells in anti-tumour responses, and their location within the tumour environment is clear, with both deleterious and beneficial correlations, depending on the subset and tumour type. Harnessing the qualities of dendritic cells to increase anti-tumour immunity is the ultimate goal, although this will require extensive knowledge of different dendritic cell subsets and their regulation through immune checkpoints.

Keywords: dendritic cells, pattern recognition receptors, immune checkpoints, tumour vaccines, plasmacytoid dendritic cell, conventional dendritic cell

1. Introduction to dendritic cells

Dendritic cells (DCs) are professional antigen presenting cells (APCs), the only cells capable of specifically activating naïve T cells and are key orchestrators of an immune response. They are a rare, heterogeneous population of haematopoietic cells that are equipped to capture, process and present antigen (Ag) to the adaptive immune system.

In a non-inflamed or steady state setting, DCs constantly sample the local environment for Ags and have the potential to induce peripheral tolerance via T cell anergy or deletion [1]. DCs recognise danger via pattern recognition receptors (PRR) on their cell surface, the cytoplasm and within cellular organelles [2]. Ligation of PRRs by pathogen associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) or damage associated molecular patterns (DAMPs), activates DC and licences DC to upregulate co-stimulatory marker expression such as CD86 and CD80 on their cell surface and initiate immunogenic T cell priming.
Chapter 4

Dendritic Cells and Their Roles in Anti-Tumour Immunity

Ee Shan Pang, Christophe Macri, Timothy Patton, Mariam Bafit and Meredith O’Keeffe

Abstract

Dendritic cells are rare cells found in blood and throughout all organs of the body as resident or migrating cell populations. Dendritic cells sense danger signals of pathogens and host cell stress through pattern receptors expressed on the cell surface and within organelles of the cell. Ligation of these receptors leads to activation and production of many different chemokines, cytokines and interferons. Key to the function of dendritic cells is their potent capacity to present antigen and activate naïve T cells. These qualities, potent antigen presentation and cytokine production together allow the dendritic cells to be at the forefront of danger responses, linking innate and adaptive immunity. Research over the last 20 years has clarified a role of dendritic cells in anti-tumour responses, and their location within the tumour environment is clear, with both deleterious and beneficial correlations, depending on the subset and tumour type. Harnessing the qualities of dendritic cells to increase anti-tumour immunity is the ultimate goal, although this will require extensive knowledge of different dendritic cell subsets and their regulation through immune checkpoints.

Keywords: dendritic cells, pattern recognition receptors, immune checkpoints, tumour vaccines, plasmacytoid dendritic cell, conventional dendritic cell

1. Introduction to dendritic cells

Dendritic cells (DCs) are professional antigen presenting cells (APCs), the only cells capable of specifically activating naïve T cells and are key orchestrators of an immune response. They are a rare, heterogeneous population of haematopoietic cells that are equipped to capture, process and present antigen (Ag) to the adaptive immune system.

In a non-inflamed or steady state setting, DCs constantly sample the local environment for Ags and have the potential to induce peripheral tolerance via T cell anergy or deletion [1]. DCs recognise danger via pattern recognition receptors (PRR) on their cell surface, the cytoplasm and within cellular organelles [2]. Ligation of PRRs by pathogen associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) or damage associated molecular patterns (DAMPS), activates DC and licences DC to upregulate co-stimulatory marker expression such as CD86 and CD80 on their cell surface and initiate immunogenic T cell priming.
DCs situated in non-lymphoid tissues, also known as migratory DCs, constantly migrate to draining lymph nodes (LN)s, maturing during this process, to present Ag to naïve T cells. Resident DCs in lymphoid organs are immature and maintain tolerance during steady state, but can stimulate naïve T cells when activated in situ. The DC maturation process not only involves morphological changes into their characteristic stellate shape with dendritic cytoplasmic processes and increased expression of MHC and co-stimulatory markers, but their Ag acquisition and sampling capabilities are initially upregulated and then rapidly shut down while MHCII expression on the cell’s surface is increased due to the simultaneous up- and down-regulation of MHCII synthesis and turnover events respectively [3]. This allows mature DCs to present a snapshot of the Ag profile in its local environment prior to migration and/or activation. Furthermore, activated DCs produce a combination of cytokines that modulate an immune response that is specific to the initial danger signals.

In humans, the majority of DC characterisation studies are of DCs isolated from the blood due to the rarity of the cell type and limited access to human tissue samples, although more investigations on non-lymphoid DCs in the skin, lung and liver have recently emerged [4–7]. DCs in the blood comprise ~1% of total peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) and are traditionally identified by the high expression of MHCII (HLA-DR) and the lack of lineage markers CD3, CD14, CD15, CD19, CD20 and CD56, although the latter marker has recently been shown to be expressed on gut and other non-lymphoid DCs [6].

Human blood DCs can be divided into conventional DCs (cDCs) and plasmacytoid DCs (pDCs), which are HLA-DRhiCD11c+123− and HLA-DRhiCD11c+123+ respectively. Human blood cDCs are further categorised into cDC1 and cDC2 subsets. Additionally, there are monocyte-derived DCs that originate separately from cDCs and pDC precursors. The recent use of whole population and single cell sequencing techniques has been instrumental in elucidating transcription factors and surface markers that are unique to each DC subset, which has helped identify

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DC subsets</th>
<th>cDC1</th>
<th>cDC2</th>
<th>pDC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Surface phenotype</strong></td>
<td>CD11c+HLA-DR+CD103+CD172α−CD141+CD1b+CD172α+CD123+CD11b+CD11c+CD123+CD141+CD11b+CD172α+CD123+</td>
<td>CD11c+HLA-DR+CD103+CD172α−CD141+CD1b+CD172α+CD123+CD11b+CD11c+CD123+</td>
<td>CD11c+HLA-DR+CD103+CD172α−CD141+CD1b+CD172α+CD123+CD11b+CD11c+CD123+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transcription factors</strong></td>
<td>BATF3, IRF8</td>
<td>IRF4, IRF8</td>
<td>TCF4, SPI1, ZEB2, IRF4, IRF8, IRF7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRR expression</strong></td>
<td>TLR3, 8</td>
<td>TLR2, cytosolic RNA sensors (RIG-I, MDA-5), STING</td>
<td>TLR7, 9, STING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ag presentation</strong></td>
<td>Cross-presentation of cellular Ag</td>
<td>Cross-presentation of soluble Ag</td>
<td>CD4+ and CD8+ T cell priming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Roles in immunity</strong></td>
<td>Potent producer of Type III IFN (after TLR3 stimulation), CTL priming, Th1 response</td>
<td>Th1, Th17 response</td>
<td>Potent producers of Type I and III IFN and mediating antiviral immunity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Previous Ag presentation abilities by pDCs are now suggested to be contributed by contaminating AXL'Siglec6− (AS) DCs.*

Table 1. Key features of human DC subsets.
relationships between DC subsets across species and tissues as well as corroborate DC functional analyses [6–9], summarised in Table 1.

2. Conventional dendritic cells 1 (cDC1)

cDC1s constitute ~0.03% of PBMCs and are found in the blood, tonsil, spleen and non-lymphoid tissues such as the skin. They were classically defined by the high expression of CD141 (blood DC antigen 3 (BDCA3) or thrombomodulin) [10]. However, CD141 is not a completely specific marker for cDC1 as it is also expressed on endothelial cells, monocytes and other DC subsets [8]. Using phenotypic, transcriptional and functional assays, these CD141+ cells have been further characterised as CD11c+HLA-DR+CD11b−CD172a−CLEC9a−XCR1−Necl2− cells that lack monocytic markers CD14 and CD16 [4, 11] identifying them as human cDC1 [12–16].

The dependence of CD141+ DCs on Flt3 ligand (FL), an important DC developmental factor, has been demonstrated in vitro and in vivo [11, 17–19] and transcription factor BATF3 is required in vitro but not in vivo [15]. Another cDC1-defining transcription factor, IRF8, is also highly expressed in human cDC1, although patients harbouring mutations in IRF8 did not exhibit cDC1 deficiencies, suggesting the involvement of other transcription factors as well [6, 20]. Furthermore, genome wide expression profiling and microarray analyses have revealed transcriptional profile clustering between CD141+ DCs in blood and non-lymphoid tissues, as well as between human blood CD141+ DCs and murine CD8a+ migratory CD103+ DCs [4, 21], firmly establishing CD141+ cDC as cDC1.

PRRs expressed by human cDC1s are predominantly Toll-like receptor (TLR) 3, located in endosomes and which recognises double-stranded RNA and TLR8, also located in endosomes and which recognises bacterial ssRNA and mammalian mitochondrial RNA [10, 22]. In response to TLR3 signals [23] and also HCV in vivo [23, 24], the cDC1 produce large amounts of type III interferon (IFN), also known as IFN-lambda (λ).

The cDC1s are superior to other DC subsets in their ability to present exogenous Ag on MHCI, a process known as cross-presentation [2] and the activation of cytotoxic CD8+ T cells, crucial for anti-tumour responses. In particular, they have a specialised ability to cross-present Ags from dead or necrotic cells to CD8+ T cells, enhanced by Clec9a on cDC1 binding to actin filaments exposed on dead and dying cells [25]. The cDC1 are superior at inducing Th1 differentiation of CD4 helper T cells [11, 16].

3. Conventional dendritic cells 2 (cDC2)

Human cDC2, traditionally known as CD1c− or BDCA1− DCs, constitute ~1% of PBMCs and can be identified by the expression of CD11c, CD11b, CD13, CD33, CD172a, HLA-DR and CD45RO [2, 10, 26]. The phenotypic similarities between these DCs and moDCs, as well as the expression of CD1c on B cells and other DC subsets, have made the precise segregation of this subset quite difficult. Although previous studies have used CD64 to exclude monocytes from bonafide CD1c+ DCs in the blood, cDCs express low levels of this marker and cannot be definitively used to separate the cell populations [6, 7]. More recently, the use of single cell RNA sequencing techniques has identified additional surface phenotypic markers, such as CLEC10A, FCGR2B, FCER1A, to distinguish human cDC2 subsets [7, 8]. In particular, CLEC10A protein has been proposed as the cDC1 CLEC9A-equivalent marker for cDC2s in different species and tissues. However, different
isoforms of Clec10A have been found in mice and should be carefully considered when using it across species [27]. Heterogeneity within the human cDC2 subset has been identified using CD5 or CD32B versus CD163 and CD36. The CD5<sup>lo</sup> or CD163<sup>+</sup> CD36<sup>+</sup> cDC2 are transcriptionally more related to monocytes than the other cDC2 subset (CD5<sup>hi</sup> or CD32B<sup>-</sup>) [8, 28]. Like cDC1, CD1c<sup>+</sup> cDC2s require FL, but also rely on transcription factors IRF4 and IRF8, for development [20, 29].

The cDC2 DCs highly express TLR2 and also express a range of cytosolic viral RNA sensors such as RIG-I [30, 31]. Different proposed cDC2 subsets also seem to have different PRR expression patterns. For example, CD5<sup>hi</sup> cDC2 express high levels of TLR7 and 8 compared to CD5<sup>lo</sup> cDC2 and CD32B<sup>-</sup> cDC2 express higher levels of TMEM173 (also known as STING) in comparison to CD163<sup>+</sup> CD36<sup>-</sup> cDC2 subset [8, 28].

Activated cDC2s can drive Th17 immune response and can also produce high levels of IL-12p70, potentially inducing Th1 differentiation [2, 29]. However, current data suggests Th17 versus Th1 driven responses may be independently driven by CD5<sup>-</sup> versus CD5<sup>+</sup> cDC2 subsets, respectively [8, 28].

Human cDC2s are able to cross-present soluble Ag to naïve and memory CD8<sup>+</sup> T cells at comparable levels with cDC1s [32–35]. However, the mechanism of cross-presentation differs between both subsets [35] and cDC2 do not possess the potent ability to cross-present Ags from dead cells. Human cDC2 are also potent stimulators of CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells [8, 10, 16].

4. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells (pDC)

The pDCs constitute ~0.01–0.04% of PBMCs and commonly reside in secondary lymphoid organs localising in the follicular cortex, T cell nodules and around high endothelial venules [36, 37]. As their name suggests, pDCs are similar in morphology to that of plasma cells. Under light microscopy, pDCs are observed to be spherical in shape with a rounded nucleus, often predominant endoplasmic reticulum and present as clusters in T-cell rich regions of lymphoid tissue [36–38].

The pDCs, originally identified as ‘natural interferon producing cells’ (NIPC), are renowned for their ability to drive immense type I and type III IFN production via TLRs 7 and 9 [39–41]. This IFN production is essential to combat viral infection but pDC-derived IFN is also thought to contribute to disease in autoimmune diseases including systemic lupus erythematosus [42]. They are also thought to play a role in Th2 induction and asthma progression in humans [42]. Conversely, pDC have also been shown to play a major role in tolerance in vivo, through their production of IDO and TGF-beta [42].

pDCs are recognised as being CD11c<sup>-hi/cD45RA<sup>-/hi/pDI<sup>+/hi/cD123<sup>-/hi/cD303<sup>-/hi/cD304<sup>-/hi/cHLA-DR<sup>-/hi</code> and can express CD56 (reviewed in [2]). pDCs may also be identified by their transcription factors including; TCF4 (also known as E2-2), SPIB, ZEB2, IRF8, IRF7 and IRF4 [43–45]. Haploinsufficiency in the TCF4 gene results in Pitts-Hopkins syndrome, which characteristically generates defective pDCs, illustrating a dependence of this factor for normal human pDC development [46].

The pDCs can be divided into 2 subsets based on CD2 expression [47]. Recent single cell transcriptomic profiling of blood DCs from healthy donors has revealed that CD2<sup>+</sup> ‘pDC’ also express AXL and SIGLEC6 (known as AS DCs). These AS DCs can stimulate CD4<sup>+</sup> and CD8<sup>+</sup> allogeneic T cell proliferation whereas the segregation of pDCs away from contaminating AS DCs demonstrated potent IFN-α production after TLR9 stimulation and a lack of T cell priming attributes [8]. Whether AS DCs and pDC are 2 distinct cell types or differentiation stages of one another is yet to be defined.
A rare and highly aggressive acute leukaemia known as Blastic Plasmacytoid Dendritic Cell Neoplasm (BPDCN) involves the malignancy of pDC precursors [48], driven, at least in part by the juxtaposition of the pDC-specific RUNX2 enhancer and the MYC promoter due to the chromosomal translocation (6;8) (p21;q24) [49]. The BPDCN can be reliably identified by immunohistochemical staining with TCF4 and CD123 antibodies [50]. BPDCNs most commonly present as skin lesions and may be accompanied by swelling of other organs such as the lymph nodes, bone marrow or spleen. Standard chemotherapy treatments for myeloid neoplasms often result in poor prognosis [51] although a toxin-conjugated anti-CD123 drug, tagraxofusel-erzs, has recently been approved as the first FDA-approved BPDCN-specific treatment [52].

5. Monocyte derived DCs

Monocyte derived DC (moDC) refers to DCs induced from monocytes with GM-CSF in vitro. These tissue culture systems originated in the early 1990s based on work showing varying combination of cytokines with GM-CSF could induce the acquisition of antigen presentation capacity in stem cells and CD34+ blood precursors [53–56], and this was optimised with the addition of IL-4 [57]. These systems have been an immensely popular tool for more than two decades for in vitro research pertaining to conventional DC biology and immunological function. They have been particularly useful in human research due to the difficulties in obtaining large numbers of ex vivo primary human DC for research. However, the feasibility of these models has recently been questioned, detailed analyses of GM-CSF induced DC cultures reveal a heterogeneous population of macrophages and conventional DCs, with the MHCIIhi cells the most DC-like [58–61].

It still remains unclear whether the moDC actually represent an in vivo equivalent cell subset. They potentially represent an in vitro equivalent of an inflammatory monocyte known as TNF/iNOS producing DCs (TipDCs), based on their surface phenotype [62], cytokine profile and a shared precursor [62]. Importantly, high intra-tumoral expression of CD40L, TNF-α and iNOS, key phenotypes of TipDCs, were strongly correlated with substantially higher long term disease free survival rates over 10 years in patients with colorectal cancer [63]. Therefore, moDCs may represent a useful and relevant in vitro model of inflammatory DCs.

5.1 MoDC and cancer vaccines

While the ex vivo induced moDC do not recapitulate bona fide DC subsets, the ease of isolation and culture has made the moDC a popular vaccine candidate in human clinical trials since the late 1990s. However, results from clinical trials using moDC in cancer immunotherapies for various cancer types have been modest at best [64, 65]. In a more recent phase II trial of patients with surgically resectable liver metastatic colon adenocarcinoma, vaccination of patients with autologous tumour lysate pulsed moDC conferred interim protection, demonstrating a 3-fold increase in the median disease free survival compared to the control arm of the study [66]. The continued refinement of moDC preparations and the choice of antigens, may see future improvements of DC cancer vaccines.

The ability to present Ag and activate the adaptive immune response makes DCs an attractive target to re-invigorate anti-cancer immunity. There are different types of DC vaccines, with the most common type involving the ex vivo maturation
of autologous DCs. In this method, DCs are isolated from patient peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) obtained via leukapheresis, incubated with maturation stimuli and tumour Ags, and vaccinated back into the patient. Because this method requires a large number of DCs, and naturally circulating blood DCs are rare, the majority of clinical trials have previously used moDCs for this type of DC vaccine and have been extensively characterised [67, 68].

Thus far, a wide variety of moDC vaccine strategies have been trialled [68]. moDCs have been differentiated and matured using monocyte conditioned medium with various supplements of cytokines (TNF-α, GM-CSF, IL-4, IFN-α), TLR agonists (LPS) and other factors such as prostaglandin E2 [67–69]. There is also variety in the type of Ags loaded into DCs such as peptides from tumour-associated Ags (TAA), TAA-encoding mRNA and whole tumour lysates [67]. More recently, the electroporation of synthetic mRNA encoding DC-maturation factors such as CD40 ligand, constitutively active TLR4 and CD70 together with fusion proteins DC-LAMP and melanoma-associated Ags into autologous moDCs (TriMixDC-MEL) have proven safe and immunogenic in phase 1 clinical trials in metastatic melanoma [70]. However, the variation in the aforementioned vaccine factors as well as the route of DC administration (intranodal, i.v.) and lack of standardised method of moDC generation has shown variable efficacies of moDC vaccines in clinical outcomes.

6. DC vaccines

More recent clinical trials using naturally circulating blood DCs have turned to CliniMACS system by Miltenyi to isolate different DC subsets from patients (Figure 1). Two completed Phase I clinical trials have used CD1c+ DCs (cDC2) loaded with TAA peptides in hormone refractory metastatic prostate cancer and metastatic melanoma and observed good safety and immunogenicity [71, 72]. Another completed Phase I trial using pDCs showed the induction of tumour-Ag specific CTL response as well as an IFN signature [33]. On-going clinical trials, as summarised by Bol et al., are not only isolating single DC subsets for vaccination, but are also trying combination vaccines comprised of cDC2 and pDC subsets and using dual-activating maturation agonists such as single stranded RNA that stimulates TLR8 on cDC2 and TLR7 on pDCs (NCT-02993315, NCT-02574377, NCT-02692976) [67]. However, there are still many challenges in using naturally circulating blood DCs in tumour vaccinations. The methodology for isolation of sufficient CD141+ cDC1 DCs, which comprise only 0.03% PBMCs, is still lacking and will be important to harness due to their superior ability to cross-present dead and necrotic Ag. Furthermore, although improved over the years, the duration of DCs spent ex vivo can drastically affect DC viability and functionality and the personalised nature of these vaccines can limit the quantity of patient access to these treatments.

Apart from the ex vivo maturation of autologous DCs, another strategy of DC vaccines has been receptor targeting (Figure 1). This involves the administration of a monoclonal Ab (mAb) specific for endocytic receptors on various DC subsets to deliver tumour Ags to DCs directly in vivo [73]. Tumour Ags are conjugated to these DC-targeting mAbs either chemically, through genetic fusion, or attachment to nanoparticles and liposomes [74]. Importantly, the administration of adjuvant, such as TLR3 agonist poly I:C, in conjunction with Ag delivery, is necessary to induce immune priming instead of tolerance, as shown in mice [75–77]. Moreover, the targeting of cross-presenting DC subsets has been particularly attractive, due to their ability to activate CTLs. DEC-205, a C-type lectin that is highly expressed on cDC1 can cross-present Ag when targeted and induce tumour Ag NY-ESO-1-specific
CD141+ cDC1 DCs, which comprise only 0.03% PBMCs, is still lacking and will be ing blood DCs in tumour vaccinations. The methodology for isolation of sufficient
02692976) [67]. However, there are still many challenges in using naturally circulat-
and using dual-activating maturation agonists such as single stranded RNA that
summarised by Bol et al., are not only isolating single DC subsets for vaccination,
specific CTL response as well as an IFN signature [33]. On-going clinical trials, as
Another completed Phase I trial using pDCs showed the induction of tumour-Ag
72].
loaded with TAA peptides in hormone refractory metastatic prostate cancer and
variety in the type of Ags loaded into DCs such as peptides from tumour-associated
agonists (LPS) and other factors such as prostaglandin E2 [67–69]. There is also
α
, GM-CSF, IL-4, IFN-
moDCs have been differentiated and matured using monocyte conditioned medium
majority of clinical trials have previously used moDCs for this type of DC vaccine
requires a large number of DCs, and naturally circulating blood DCs are rare, the
stimuli and tumour Ags, and vaccinated back into the patient. Because this method
mononuclear cells (PBMCs) obtained via leukapheresis, incubated with maturation
of autologous DCs. In this method, DCs are isolated from patient peripheral blood
Current Cancer Treatment
Dendritic Cells and Their Roles in Anti-Tumour Immunity
DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.91692

cellular and humoral responses in patients with solid cancers [78, 79]. However,
DEC-205 is also expressed on many other cell-types including CD1c+ DCs, pDCs
and monocytes which can affect targeting specificities and efficiencies [79–81]. In
contrast, another C-type lectin, Clec9a (also known as DNGR-1), is specifically
expressed on cDC1 and strategies targeting this molecule have demonstrated highly
immunogenic responses without adjuvant in non-human primates, and also super-
ior Ag-specific cross-presentation when targeted in vitro and in vivo [79, 81, 82].
Based on these pre-clinical studies, the progression of vaccines targeting Clec9a into
clinical trials is much anticipated.

7. DC in the tumour microenvironment

The tumour microenvironment (TME) is a complex niche of tumour cells,
stromal cells and tumour infiltrating myeloid and lymphoid immune cells. The
dynamic nature of this niche varies with different types and stages of cancer, as
well as between patients themselves. It has been established that the infiltration of
CD8+ cytotoxic T cells have been associated with better treatment outcomes with
checkpoint blockade therapies in a number of cancer types including metastatic melanoma [83]. However, the phenotype and role of tumour-infiltrating DCs (TIDCs) are less clear, possibly due to the lack of consistent markers probing DCs within the TME and the lack of distinctions between monocyte and putative DC subsets [84].

Using immunohistochemistry staining, many studies have previously used CD1a and S100 proteins to identify TIDCs. The higher density of these cells within tumours correlated with better clinical outcomes in melanoma and head and neck cancers [84, 85]. However, discrepancies in this correlation were reported in colon, breast, gastric, nasopharyngeal, lung and ovarian cancers [84, 86–88]. One major factor that could explain these reported discrepancies is the markers used to identify DCs. CD1a and S100 are expressed at different levels on Langerhans cells (LCs), interdigitating DCs and moDCs, but not on cDCs or pDCs and the expression of these markers on epithelial-tropic DCs such as LCs could account for the strong correlations observed in only the epithelial cancers [84]. Furthermore, DC activation markers CD83 and DC-LAMP were used to identify mature DCs, though CD83 is not expressed in all DC subsets [7, 84, 89]. In breast adenocarcinoma patients, immature DCs were found to localise within the tumour whereas CD83/DC-LAMP+ mature DCs localised in the peri-tumour edges [90]. Some studies have reported significant correlations between the intratumoral infiltration of mature DCs with better clinical outcomes. For example, a recent report showed that the recruitment of DC-LAMPhi cells into the tumour stroma exhibited strong correlations with significantly higher overall and relapse-free survival in high-grade serous ovarian carcinoma [91]. However, this correlation has also been inconsistent in a number of different cancers [85, 90, 92–94].

More recently, with the establishment of The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) program, scientists are able to compare DC-specific signatures with a publicly available molecular and clinical database of a vast array of cancers. In melanoma and breast cancer patients, DC-specific genes such as BATF3, IRF8, CLEC9A and FLT3 were associated with higher CTL scores and better overall survival [95–97]. They also exhibited positive correlations with chemokines CXCL9, 10 and 11 and chemokine receptor CCR7 expression [95, 96]. Furthermore, Broz et al. [98] observed strong associations between cDC1-derived genes within the tumour and better overall survival in breast cancer, head-neck squamous cell carcinoma and lung adenocarcinoma. This corroborates mouse tumour models showing that migratory cDC1 subsets are required for cross-presenting tumour Ag in tumour-draining lymph nodes and priming of cytotoxic CD8+ T cells [97, 99].

Whilst the recent data above points towards a benefit of the infiltration of conventional DC into tumour sites, the correlation between tumour infiltrating pDCs and poor survival prognosis is clear. This has been described in breast, head and neck, ovarian and lung cancers [100–103] where it is thought that pDC-induced tolerance and impaired IFN-α production contributes to a suppressive, non-immunogenic TME. Indeed mouse studies point to a role of TGF-β in the tumour environment in preventing an activatory phenotype of pDC and favouring a tolerising, IDO producing phenotype [104].

Further factors within the TME that have been illustrated to correlate with DC infiltration or function include for example, vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), a tumour angiogenic factor, inversely correlated with DC density and overall survival in gastric adenocarcinoma tissues [87, 105]. High serum VEGF levels were also associated with low blood cDC1 and cDC2 numbers in colorectal and non-small cell lung cancers and treatment of VEGF decoy
receptor, VEGF-Trap, increased the proportion of mature DCs, but not overall numbers or DC priming function in various solid cancer patients [106–108]. Direct evidence of VEGF-induced DC inhibition was also reported in DCs differentiated from CD34+ precursors and moDCs [105, 106, 109]. Other cytokines such as IL-6, IL-10 and TGFβ have also demonstrated DC-inhibitory effects in the TME [104, 110–114].

In metastatic melanoma patients, higher active β-catenin signalling within the tumour was associated with low cDC1 signatures and T cell signatures [115]. Furthermore, the expression of fatty acid synthase was inversely correlated with CD11c+ DC signatures in ovarian, prostate and bladder cancers [116].

8. DC and immune checkpoint inhibitors

Chemotherapy and radiotherapy have remained the core pillars of cancer treatments. However, the combination of these traditional therapies with immunotherapies targeting immune checkpoint receptors has greatly enhanced patient clinical outcomes, especially in patients with immunogenic cancers, summarised in Table 2.

Immune checkpoints consist of a family of co-stimulatory and co-inhibitory receptors expressed by T cells that modulate their immune responses. Signalling from these receptors depends on their interaction with specific ligands present at the surface of various immune and non-immune cells. These regulatory pathways are a major cause of immune suppression during cancer due the high levels of co-inhibitory ligands being expressed in the tumour microenvironment, resulting in T cell immunosuppression. Monoclonal antibodies (mAb) blocking programmed cell death 1 (PD-1) and cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein 4 (CTLA4), two co-inhibitory immune checkpoint receptors have become routine treatment against many malignancies and more therapeutic molecules against members of the immune checkpoint family are being trialled. Here we review the role of DC in the response to immune checkpoint therapies.

8.1 DC and PD-1

PD-1 is expressed by activated T cells and interacts with two ligands, PD-L1 (B7-H1/CD274) and PD-L2 (B7-DC/CD273). PD-1 engagement results in down-regulation of T cell proliferation and function [117]. This inhibitory pathway is harnessed by tumour cells to escape attack by T cells through expression of PD-L1 on their cell surface. Anti-PD-1/PD-L1 therapies have shown considerable effects on patients with high PD-L1-expressing tumours, boosting the effector functions of tumour-associated CD8+ T cells inducing tumour regression. To date, two anti-PD-1 mAb (Pembrolizumab, Nivolumab) and three anti-PD-L1 mAb (Atezolizumab, Durvalumab, Avelumab) have been approved for the treatment of cancers including advanced melanoma, non-small-cell lung cancer, head and neck squamous cell carcinoma, Hodgkin lymphoma and renal carcinoma [118].

The ligands for PD-1 are abundant on DC. PD-L1 expression is on pDC and cDC subsets and upregulated in response to inflammatory stimuli and following exposure to platinum-based chemotherapy drugs [84, 119]. Furthermore, PD-L1 is also highly expressed on DC that infiltrate tumours as exemplified by the high PD-L1 expression measured on both pDC and multiple myeloma cells isolated from the bone-marrow of multiple myeloma patients [120]. PD-L2 is detectable at low
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Checkpoint inhibitor (CI)</th>
<th>CI cell expression</th>
<th>Ligand</th>
<th>Ligand cell expression</th>
<th>Anti-CI mAb clinical name</th>
<th>Clinical outcome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PD-1</td>
<td>T, B, NK cells, DC</td>
<td>PD-L1/2</td>
<td>PD-L1: DC, monocytes, Treg, cells, tumour; PD-L2: Activated cDC, moDCs</td>
<td>Pembrolizumab, Nivolumab</td>
<td>Approved for metastatic melanoma, renal cell carcinoma, squamous-cell carcinoma of head and neck, Hodgkin’s lymphoma, metastatic colorectal, non-small cell lung, Merkel cell and ovarian cancers Improved clinical outcomes in combination with peptide/vector vaccines for advanced solid cancers, metastatic melanoma and HPV-16-related cancers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTLA4</td>
<td>T cells, activated moDCs</td>
<td>CD80/86 (B7/1/2)</td>
<td>APC</td>
<td>Ipilimumab, Tremelimunab</td>
<td>Approved for metastatic melanoma, renal cell carcinoma and colorectal cancer treatments Mixed results in combination with peptide and moDC vaccines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIM-3</td>
<td>T, B cells, cDC, myeloid cells</td>
<td>Galectin-9, CEACAM-1, HMGB1, phosphatidylserine</td>
<td>Tumour</td>
<td>— (pre-clinical)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAG-3</td>
<td>Activated T, NK cells, pDCs</td>
<td>MHCII</td>
<td>APC</td>
<td>LAG-3 Ig fusion protein</td>
<td>Elevated clinical activity Phase I/II trial in combination with paclitaxel for metastatic breast carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICOS</td>
<td>Treg cells, activated T cells</td>
<td>ICOS-L</td>
<td>APC (especially activated pDCs)</td>
<td>MEDI-570</td>
<td>Phase I Trial for T cell lymphoma (National Cancer Institute Clinical Trial NCT02520791)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2. List of checkpoint inhibitors, their ligands, cell expression and clinical associations.
levels on cDC only after activation and is highly expressed by moDC [121]. Whether PD-L2 is also expressed by DC in different TMEs and the effect of anti-PD-L2 therapies is yet to be defined.

cDC1 play a critical role in the efficacy of anti-PD-1/PD-L1 mAb therapies. Single cell mass spectrometry analyses of PBMC from patients with advanced melanoma, before and after anti-PD-1 therapy revealed that CD141 and CD11c, both expressed by cDC1 are strong predictive biomarkers of clinical response to anti-PD-1 treatments [122]. This is consistent with several mouse studies reporting that cDC1-deficient mice do not respond to immune checkpoint blockade using anti-PD-L1 or a combination of anti-PD-1 anti-CTLA4 mAb [123, 124]. Furthermore, mice that possess cDC1 defective in antigen cross-presentation fail to establish CTL responses and do not respond to anti-PD-1 blockade [125].

The success of anti-PD-1 therapy also depends on a cross-talk between cDC1 and T cells in the TME. In mouse models anti-PD-1 treatment induces IL-12 production by tumour-infiltrating cDC1 [124, 126] which amplifies T cell effector functions. In melanoma patients, the clinical electroporation of an IL-12 plasmid in the tumour lesions enhances the CTL gene signature, thus validating the role of this cytokine in supporting CTL responses [126]. Figure 1.

In addition to its ligands, expression of the PD-1 receptor on DC has been reported during cancer. In hepatocellular carcinoma patients, detectable levels of PD-1 were reported on peripheral blood cDC1, cDC2 and pDC whereas PD-1 was only present on cDC1 in healthy donors. This was confirmed with microscopy analyses of cancerous liver tissues showing co-expression of PD-1 and the DC marker CD11c [127]. In line with this data, co-expression of PD-1 and PD-L1 was detected on CD11c+ DC isolated from the tumours of non-small cell lung cancer patients [128]. However, in this case, PD-1 was absent from DC isolated from the PBMC of either cancer patients or healthy donors, suggesting that PD-1 is upregulated locally on DC in response to the immunosuppressive tumour environment [128].

Mouse studies support an inhibitory role of PD-1 on DC [127]. This finding however contrasts with a recent study revealing that PD-1 can establish cis-interactions with both PD-L1 and PD-L2 at the cell membrane. PD-L1/PD-1 cis-interaction disrupts PD-L1 binding to PD-1 on T cells, thus resulting in increased T cell activities. However, whether this mechanism exists in DC in the setting of cancer remains unknown [128]. Similarly, several reports have shown that PD-L1 can interact in cis with the immune checkpoint ligand CD80/B7.1 [129–131] and this occurs on several types of APC, including cDC1 and cDC2 [131]. The PD-L1/CD80 cis-interaction limits the binding of PD-L1 to PD-1 on T cells and ultimately promotes T cell immune responses [131]. Altogether, these data show that, while trans-interactions between PD-L1 and PD-1 at the interface of DC and T cells promote T cell immune suppression, cis-interactions between PD-L1 and other molecules on DC show opposite effects and could potentially promote cancer immunity.

Combining anti-PD-1/PD-L1 therapy with DC-based vaccines, or vaccines that target DC in situ, or include a DC growth factor, is a logical strategy to increase responses to checkpoint blockade in cancer patients. Several studies in mice have reported that such combination leads to higher protection by boosting the antigen-specific T cell immune response induced by different type of vaccines [18, 123, 132–134]. Several vaccines containing peptides or viral vectors, in combination with anti-PD-1 mAb Pembolizumab or Nivolumab, have shown encouraging results in early clinical trial with patients with advanced solid cancers, melanoma and Human Papillomavirus 16-Related Cancer [135–138].
8.2 DC and CTLA4

The co-inhibitory immune checkpoint CTLA4 (CD152) is constitutively expressed by regulatory T cells (Treg) and by effector T cells upon activation. CTLA4 is highly homologous to the co-stimulatory receptor CD28 and binds the same ligands CD80 and CD86 (B7.2), however with a much higher affinity. As such, CTLA4 outcompetes CD28 for ligand binding and reduces CD28-mediated co-stimulation of T cell functions. CTLA4 blockade promotes anti-tumour immunity by increasing the activation of effector T cells and by depleting Treg in the TME. The CTLA4 blocking mAb Ipilimumab and Tremelimumab have been approved for the treatment of metastatic melanoma, renal cell carcinoma and colorectal cancer [118].

CTLA4 on T cells directly alters DC functions by removing the CTLA4 ligands (CD80/86) from their cell surfaces. When human moDC are co-cultured with CTLA4+ T cells, CD80/86 levels on DC decrease rapidly in a CTLA4-dependent manner. This mechanism, named trans-endocytosis, involves the physical capture of CTLA4 ligands by the receptor and their degradation. This process is upregulated by TCR engagement [139, 140]. Mouse in vivo studies show that trans-endocytosis is primarily carried out by regulatory T cells and impacts the migratory cDC1 and cDC2 [141]. In addition, CTLA4 interaction with CD80/CD86 on DC induces immunosuppression through reverse signalling. MoDC stimulated with soluble CTLA4 or agonistic anti-CD80/86 Ab produced indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO), which is able to inhibit allogenic T cell activation [142]. IDO is expressed by human pDC [143], hence similar immunosuppressive pathways are likely to be induced downstream of CD80/86 in this subset, as reported in mouse pDC [144].

Besides their regulation through CTLA4-CD80/86 interaction, moDC also express the CTLA4 molecule upon activation by TLR stimuli. Treatment of these cells with an agonistic anti-CTLA4 Ab induced increased production of IL-10, reduced expression of IL-8 and IL-12 and decreased T cell stimulation capacity [145]. MoDC are also able to secrete CTLA4 in extracellular microvesicles. Microvesicular CTLA4 has been shown to downregulate CD80 and CD86 on moDC [146].

Combinatorial approaches of anti-CTLA4 mAb with cancer vaccines have been tested in clinics and have yielded mixed results. In melanoma patients, peptide vaccines, in combination with anti-CTLA4 Ipilimumab did not show better clinical outcomes compared to Ipilimumab alone [127, 147, 148]. However, other strategies using DC vaccines have provided promising results. For instance, the co-administration to melanoma patients of autologous moDC that have been pulsed with tumour peptide, together with Tremelimumab, resulted in objective and durable tumour responses [149]. Furthermore, a phase II study using Ipilimumab and moDC electroporated with synthetic mRNA (TriMixDC-MEL) has been tested in advanced melanoma patients and has shown an encouraging rate of highly durable tumour response [150].

8.3 DC and TIM-3

T cell immunoglobulin mucin-3 (TIM-3) is a co-inhibitory immune checkpoint receptor expressed by all T cell populations as well as B cells and a large variety of myeloid cells. Four TIM-3 ligands have been identified, including Galectin-9, CEACAM-1, HMGB1 and phosphatidylinerine. Engagement of TIM-3 on
tumour-infiltrating T cells induces exhaustion and suppresses tumour immunity. Preclinical studies have reported high therapeutic activities of blocking anti-TIM-3 antibodies against various types of malignancies and clinical trials with TIM-3 inhibitors are currently underway [128].

High TIM-3 expression has been reported on cDC1 and cDC2 from peripheral blood [151–153] and on tumour-associated cDC1 and cDC2 from mammary tumour biopsies [152]. Mouse models indicated that blocking TIM-3 on cDC1 leads to an increase in the T cell chemoattractant CXCL9. Moreover, cDC1 expressing TIM-3 correlated with CXCL9 expression in human breast cancer biopsies and was positively associated with CD8+ T cell infiltration. These data suggest that TIM-3 blocking in these cancers could potentially enhance CD8+ T cell recruitment to the TME [152].

8.4 DC and LAG-3

Lymphocyte activation gene-3 (LAG-3) is a co-inhibitory immune checkpoint receptor expressed on activated T cells and NK cells that recognise MHCII molecules on APCs as a ligand. LAG3 negatively regulates T cell activation and is frequently co-expressed with PD-1 on exhausted T cells in the TME. Several LAG-3-targeting cancer immunotherapies are currently in different phases of clinical development [154].

The interaction between MHCII and LAG-3 not only has effects in T cells, but also induces reverse signalling in DCs that is stimulatory. This was shown using the soluble LAG-3-Ig fusion protein that activates moDC, as indicated by the upregulation of co-stimulatory molecules, the production of several pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines and increased allogenic T cell activation. However, Ab-mediated MHCII ligation does not activate moDC, thus showing that the MHCII: LAG-3 interaction is required in this process [155–157]. Soluble LAG-3-Ig fusion protein in combination with the chemotherapy drug Paclitaxel has demonstrated elevated clinical activity in metastatic breast carcinoma during a phase I/II trial. This treatment also strongly stimulated the patients' APC, as evidenced by the increase in the number and activation of monocytes, pDC and cDCs [158].

Notably, LAG-3 itself has been found expressed by DC, specifically by a sub-population of circulating pDC in healthy donors. LAG-3+ pDC are also found in the tumour lesions and in the tumour-draining lymph nodes of melanoma patients and are thought to contribute to the immunosuppressive environment. Engagement of LAG-3 on pDC provides an activating signal, independent of TLR signalling, inducing low IFN-α and high IL-6 expression [159]. Hence, LAG-3-specific mAb in cancer immunotherapies may enhance the anti-tumour immune response by inhibiting LAG-3 signalling in both T cells and DC.

8.5 DC and ICOS

Inducible T cell costimulatory (ICOS) belongs to the co-stimulatory immune checkpoint receptor family and similarly to CD28, enhances the proliferation and effector functions of T cells. ICOS is expressed on activated T cells and constitutively on a subpopulation of Treg [160] while ICOS-L is present at the surface of APC. High ICOS expression on T cells has been particularly observed during anti-CTLA4 therapies and the co-administration of agonistic ICOS-specific mAb further improves the efficacy to CTLA4 blockade [161].
pDC are able to induce immunosuppression though ICOS stimulation. ICOS-L is strongly upregulated by human blood pDC, but not CD11c+ cDC, in response to TLR stimuli or IL-3 [162]. Co-cultures of pDC with allogenic T cells induced IL-10 expression through a mechanism mediated by ICOS-L-ICOS interaction [162] and similar observations were reported with pDC isolated from ovarian carcinoma [163]. Furthermore, pDC are able to induce Treg proliferation though ICOS stimulation [160] and this mechanism likely explains the dramatic accumulation of ICOS+ Treg in ovarian, breast, liver and gastric tumour tissues, in close proximity with ICOS-L+ pDC [101, 164–166].

9. Summary

DCs are rare, heterogeneous cells with clear roles in anti-tumour immunity. As summarised in Figure 1, understanding how best to activate DC to gain optimal anti-tumour adaptive immune responses will likely involve careful optimisation of adjuvants, checkpoint immunotherapies and DC targeting strategies. Emerging studies will likely examine checkpoint receptors and their ligands on DC, lymphocytes and other cells in tumour environments, in order to design targeted therapies for optimal antigen presentation, DC activation and anti-tumour response.

Author details

Ee Shan Pang1, Christophe Macri2, Timothy Patton1, Mariam Baﬁt1 and Meredith O’Keeffe1

1 Infection and Immunity Program, Monash Biomedicine Discovery Institute and Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Monash University, Clayton, Victoria, Australia

2 Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Bio21 Institute, The University of Melbourne, Parkville, VIC, Australia

*Address all correspondence to: meredith.okeeffe@monash.edu

IntechOpen

© 2020 The Author(s). Licensee IntechOpen. This chapter is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.
References


nucleic acids in viral infection and autoimmune diseases. Nature Reviews Immunology. 2008;8:594. DOI: 10.1038/nri2358


[53] Cavanagh L, Saal R, Grimmet K, Thomas R. Proliferation in monocyte-derived dendritic cell cultures is caused by progenitor cells capable


Dendritic Cells and Their Roles in Anti-Tumour Immunity
DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.94692

2018;78:3014-3026. DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.can-17-2719


Dendritic Cells and Their Roles in Anti-Tumour Immunity

DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.91692

binds to B7-1 only in cis on the same cell surface. Cancer Immunology Research. 2018;6:921-929. DOI: 10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-17-0316


[142] Munn DH, Sharma MD, Mellor AL. Ligation of B7-1/B7-2 by human CD4+ T cells triggers...
indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase activity in dendritic cells. Journal of Immunology. 2004;172:4100-4110. DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.172.7.4100


[156] Avice MN, Sarfati M, Triebel F, Delespesse G, Demeure CE. Lymphocyte activation gene-3, a MHC class II ligand expressed on activated T cells, stimulates TNF-alpha and IL-12 production by monocytes and dendritic cells. Journal of Immunology. 1999;162:2748-2753


Chapter 5
What Are the New Challenges of the Current Cancer Biomarkers?
Jie Chen, Liqiong Yang, Yuxi Duan, Tinging Pu, Sha Zheng, Fangfang Liu, Kun Huang, Greg Mirt and Fan Xu

Abstract
Biomarkers are emerging research filed in the past decade. Even though numerous biomarkers were reported, the efficiency of cancer therapy remains low. So the question emerges as to how much can we trust the current biomarkers on cancer therapy? In this upcoming chapter, we would like to illustrate the outcomes of classical cancer therapies on advanced pancreatic cancer disclosed successful, neutral and failed in clinical trials. The analysis will be carried on the perspective interdisciplinary on the biomarkers including anatomy, physiology, pharmacology, biochemistry, history path and development of pharmacy. Particular in-depth insight may open a window for new researches and lighting the therapies.

Keywords: advanced pancreatic cancer, biomarker, clinical trials

1. Introduction
Advance pancreatic cancer (APC) is a highly lethal tumor. Most patients with APC remain asymptomatic until the disease reaches an advanced stage [1]. The incidence rate was 5.5 for men and 4.0 for women per 100,000 people. The mortality rate was 5.1 for men and 3.8 for women per 100,000 people around the world, according to data, from 2018 [2]. For the incidence rate, Asia is at 48.4%, Europe at 23.4%, and the Americas is at 21.0%. As for the mortality rate, Asia is at 57.3%, Europe at 20.3%, and the Americas is at 14.3% [3].

Our previous study disclosed that there were more than 19 chemotherapy regimens combinations in clinical practice available [4]. The advantages and disadvantages of each therapy regimens are clear. Briefly, to lengthen the overall survival and to reduce the treatment-related toxicity we must consider the outclass selection. There are more than 14 treatment-related toxicities in gastrointestinal, constitutional, skin, hepatotoxicity, infection, vascular, neuropathy, mental, pain, renal, electrolytes and pulmonary of human body in current dominant chemotherapy regimens. To broaden the balance requires expertise and professional medical training based on evidence.

2. Long period run in research and development in pharmacy
The development of drugs is based on the determination of new therapeutic targets, the pharmacological receptors. This concept was first proposed by Paul
Chapter 5

What Are the New Challenges of the Current Cancer Biomarkers?

Jie Chen, Liqiong Yang, Yuxi Duan, Tinging Pu, Sha Zheng, Fangfang Liu, Kun Huang, Greg Mirt and Fan Xu

Abstract

Biomarkers are emerging research filed in the past decade. Even though numerous biomarkers were reported, the efficiency of cancer therapy remains low. So the question emerges as to how much can we trust the current biomarkers on cancer therapy? In this upcoming chapter, we would like to illustrate the outcomes of classical cancer therapies on advanced pancreatic cancer disclosed successful, neutral and failed in clinical trials. The analysis will be carried on the perspective interdisciplinary on the biomarkers including anatomy, physiology, pharmacology, biochemistry, history path and development of pharmacy. Particular in-depth insight may open a window for new researches and lighting the therapies.

Keywords: advanced pancreatic cancer, biomarker, clinical trials

1. Introduction

Advance pancreatic cancer (APC) is a highly lethal tumor. Most patients with APC remain asymptomatic until the disease reaches an advanced stage [1]. The incidence rate was 5.5 for men and 4.0 for women per 100,000 people. The mortality rate was 5.1 for men and 3.8 for women per 100,000 people around the world, according to data, from 2018 [2]. For the incidence rate, Asia is at 48.4%, Europe at 23.4%, and the Americas is at 21.0%. As for the mortality rate, Asia is at 57.3%, Europe at 20.3%, and the Americas is at 14.3% [3].

Our previous study disclosed that there were more than 19 chemotherapy regimens combinations in clinical practice available [4]. The advantages and disadvantages of each therapy regimens are clear. Briefly, to lengthen the overall survival and to reduce the treatment-related toxicity we must consider the outclass selection. There are more than 14 treatment-related toxicities in gastrointestinal, constitutional, skin, hepatotoxicity, infection, vascular, neuropathy, mental, pain, renal, electrolytes and pulmonary of human body in current dominant chemotherapy regimens. To broaden the balance requires expertise and professional medical training based on evidence.

2. Long period run in research and development in pharmacy

The development of drugs is based on the determination of new therapeutic targets, the pharmacological receptors. This concept was first proposed by Paul
Ehrlich in 1908 [5]. Normal cells replicate their DNA with great accuracy, but cancer has a large number of mutations that show up in cancer cells that make them pharmacological targets [6]. From the initial concept of molecular targets, drug targets were discovered and validated, which successful translated the most drugs into practice [7].

Excellent and reliable targets identification and validation can increase the credibility of the relationship between intentions and diseases, this may strength the effectively of drugs. Drugs are usually developed only when specific drug target for the action of these drugs are analyzed and examined. Sufficient potential targets have been discovered rapidly for the drug discovery process.

Numerous data including identified gene and drug discovery cycles have been generated exponentially. This may forge the difficultness in decision making and becomes more and more difficult for drug R&D. Thanks to rapid bioinformatic discoveries, more and more biopharmaceutical targets can be identified and analyzed [8].

Validation from cross-species a bioeffect is performed after the drug target is determined and verified. Rodents and non-human primates provide appropriate animal models for screening and evaluation of a new drug. Most of current cancer in vivo experiments use rodent experimental animals such as mice and rats. Because they are small, rapid reproduction, clear genetic background and mature genetic modification technology can be done. However, due to the distant relationship between rodents and humans, many of the results obtained from rodent models cannot be reproduced in humans. Moreover, non-human primates are highly similar to humans in terms of genetic evolution, immunity, physiology and metabolism. They are theoretically more suitable for cancer researches [9].

Clinical trials are the best channel to tie up pharmaceutical targets to reliable drugs. The goal is to determine whether a candidate drug is safe and effective. There are four phases in clinical trials. More specific biomarker studies are based on data from prospective studies [10]. In the study of cancer biomarkers, retrospective studies and prospective studies help to identify potential biomarkers, which may be validated in the future studies, however, the reliability of evidence remains controversial.

3. Can we trust the current biomarkers of cancer?

Unfortunately, the overall survival of APC patients has not revised assuredly. There are too many choices in clinical practice and evidence-based medicine is a permanent challenge. Which of the modern biomarkers is reliable? Are we ever going to detect precise pharmaceutical targets on APC [11]?

4. Validation method

In order to clarify this question, we collected the raw data source (http://clinicaltrials.gov) and searched all the drug treatments on APC. We refined all the data which had results and were published. Briefly, a total of 2726 recordings were found since May 2019. Hundred and fifteen recordings which finished clinical trials, further we ruled out irrelevant 32 recordings and 56 unclear results. Finally, 27 recordings kept comprising the following three tables. Raw data are free, please follow the link 10.6084/m9.figshare.8275190.
5. What can data tell us?

Total, there are 18 biomarkers used among these results. For details please see Table 1. The results from 27 clinical trials could be divided into three categories (a) rank of the effectiveness (b) rank of intervention and (c) quality of life improved.

5.1 Estimation of clinical trials with success outcome on advanced pancreatic cancer

Total, we found 10 publications where the author declares the successful outcome on the treatment of APC from 2011 to 2019, Table 2. These clinical trials recruited 1080 patients with APC (611 male and 469 female). The average overall survival month is 11.62 and progress-free survival month is 10.79. Briefly, Lutz et al. tests the GVAX pancreatic cancer vaccine via GPI biomarkers The OS and PFS approach got the highest point, 24.8 and 17.3, respectively Similarly, Phan et al. tested the pazopanib hydrochloride via VEGF biomarkers. This approach had a higher OS and PFS points. Survival months are 25 and 14.4. Furthermore, Hong et al. disclosed the capecitabine may put the OS and PFS to 17.3 and 10.4 survival months; the remain studies presented similar results, the OS and PFS were lower than 10 months.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Biomarkers</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vascular endothelial growth factor*</td>
<td>VEGF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thymidine phosphoryase</td>
<td>TP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epidermal growth factor receptor*</td>
<td>EGFR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor necrosis factor α</td>
<td>TNF-α</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topoisomerase I inhibitor</td>
<td>TIH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonic hedgehog</td>
<td>SHH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe hypoxia intracellular reductases</td>
<td>SHIR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secreted protein acid rich in cysteine</td>
<td>SPARC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platelet-derived growth factor</td>
<td>PDGF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEK1/2-dependent effector proteins</td>
<td>ERK1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kirsten rat sarcoma viral oncogene homolog*</td>
<td>KRAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interleukin 6/interleukin 8</td>
<td>IL-6/IL-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat shock protein 27</td>
<td>Hsp27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycosyl-phosphatidylinositol</td>
<td>GPI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double-strand breaks in DNA</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checkpoint kinase 1</td>
<td>CHK1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microtubule-associated protein light chain 3- II</td>
<td>LC3- II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circulating free DNA</td>
<td>cfDNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase</td>
<td>DPD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NCCN Recommend: National Comprehensive Cancer Network.

Table 1. Potential biomarkers used in advanced pancreatic cancer.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>OS</th>
<th>PFS</th>
<th>Biomarkers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Hill [12]</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Capecitabine; docetaxel;</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>TP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gemcitabine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Lutz [13]</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>GVAX pancreatic cancer</td>
<td>24.8</td>
<td>17.3</td>
<td>GPI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vaccine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Raymond [14]</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>Sunitinib</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>VEGF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>Sunitinib</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Hosein [15]</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Abraxane</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>SPARC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Soares [16]</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Capecitabine; docetaxel;</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>TP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gemcitabine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Ban [17]</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Belotaxel; belloxa</td>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Double-strand breaks in DNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Borad [18]</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>TH-302 with gemcitabine;</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Severe hypoxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gemcitabine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Intracellular reductases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>71</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>TH-303 with gemcitabine;</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gemcitabine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>74</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>TH-304 with gemcitabine;</td>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gemcitabine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Pazopanib hydrochloride</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>12.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2019</td>
<td>Wang-Gillam [20]</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>MM-398</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>Topoisomerase I inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>149</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>5 Fluorouracil; leucovorin</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>117</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>MM-398; 5 fluorouracil;</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>leucovorin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.
Clinical trials with a successful outcome on pancreatic cancer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>OS</th>
<th>PFS</th>
<th>Biomarkers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Spano [21]</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>Gemcitabine</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>VEGF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>34</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Gemcitabine; AG-013736</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Hobday [22]</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>Bevacizumab; temsirolimus</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>VEGF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2016</td>
<td>Stein [23]</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>MPC modified FOLFIRINOX</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>DPD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>31</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>LAPC modified FOLFIRINOX</td>
<td>26.6</td>
<td>17.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3.
Clinical trial with neutral outcomes on pancreatic cancer.
5.2 Estimation of clinical trials with the neutral outcome on advanced pancreatic cancer

Here are three studies clarified neutral results in OS and PFS result, ranged from 2008 to 2016, totally recruited 229 APC patients (121 male and 108 female). For details please see Table 3. Averagely the OS is 16.6 months and PFS is 9 months in neutral studies. For example, Jean in 2008 reported gemcitabine plus AG-013736 achieved better OS and PFS (6.9 and 4.2) than gemcitabine single used.

5.3 Estimation of clinical trials with the failed outcome on advanced pancreatic cancer

Regarding the failed outcomes, there are 14 studies ranged from 2011 to 2018, recruited 2448 APC patients (1385 male and 1063 female) for clinical trials. For details please see Table 1. Averagely the OS is 8.25 months and PFS is 4.39 months. It is evident that Faivre et al. in 2016 tested sunitinib malate to treat APC and achieved 38.6 months of OS and 12.6 months of PFS. However, Brian reported that hydroxychloroquine cures APC, unfortunately, there were 1.8 months both in OS and PFS negativity. Even though many combination tests, the benefit for APC patient is low.

6. Different perspectives on biomarkers

6.1 Vascular endothelial growth factor, VEGF

VEGF is a highly specific vascular endothelial cell mitogen and an angiogenic factor associated with platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) structure. It is also known as vascular permeability factor (VPF), due to its permeabilization of blood vessels [24]. It is a subfamily of growth factors and belongs to a family of platelet-derived growth factors of cystine knot growth factor. VEGF is divided into the following groups: VEGF-A, VEGF-B, VEGF-C, VEGF-D, VEGF-E and placental growth factor. VEGF binds to three transmembrane receptors (VEGFR1, VEGFR2 and VEGFR3). This receptor initiates downstream signaling through intracellular tyrosine kinase activity [25]. In fact, VEGF family members are playing an important role in the physiological angiogenesis of adults. Like wound healing, ovulation and pregnancy [26].

Activation of the VEGF/VEGFR receptor (VEGFR) axis may trigger multiple signaling networks. Consequently, this may lead to endothelial cell survival, mitosis, migration and differentiation, vascular permeability and mobilization of endothelial progenitor cells (EPCs) from the bone marrow into the peripheral circulation [27]. On ligand binding, VEGFR-2 dimerization results in kinase activation and autophosphorylation of tyrosine residues. Activation of PKC may stimulate the Raf/MEK/ERK pathway, which accelerates the cell proliferation. Ca2⁺ mobilization and PKC activation are playing the key role in signaling events for VEGF-A-induced vascular permeability through activation of endothelial nitric oxide synthase activity [28].

The sword has double sides. VEGF participates in the pathogenesis of cancer, proliferative retinopathy and rheumatoid arthritis [29]. Its antibodies have shown therapeutic potential to inhibit tumor growth in vivo by inhibiting tumor-induced angiogenesis [30]. VEGF overexpression is associated with a variety of tumor progression and poor prognosis, including colorectal cancer [31], pancreatic cancer [32],
gastric cancer [33], breast cancer [34], lung cancer [35], prostate cancer [36] and melanoma [37]. This unique protein aids tumors grow and can be used for cancer treatment if used properly.

Early in 1971, Folkman first proposed the idea of angiogenesis. He believed that tumor growth and proliferation are closely related to angiogenesis and could be used as a targeted tumor therapy procedure [38]. Subsequently, countless scientists gathered in the field of VEGF to study the molecular mechanism of VEGF in tumor angiogenesis. They have also used it as a drug target to block the formation of blood vessels, thereby inhibiting tumor growth [39]. Studies have shown that the mechanism of anti-VEGF inhibitors may involve a variety of signaling pathways, such as FGF, D114, PGF/VEGFR1 and VEGF-C/VEGFR2. At least some of these pathways can increase the efficacy of VEGF inhibitors [40]. The anti-tumor drugs were developed with VEGF as the main target area. Like anti-VEGF humanized monoclonal antibody, VEGF-targeted antibody, protein kinase inhibitor and tumor vaccine [41, 42]. However, in the clinical application of anti-antigenic drugs, reliable biomarkers have not been found to screen the target population before patient improvement.

Our data disclosed that there were two studies reporting successful outcomes [14, 19], two studies reported neutral outcomes [21, 22] and four studies reported negative outcomes [43–46]. The results from the above eight trials remain controversial.

Regarding successful outcomes, Raymond et al. found that neuroendocrine tumors may be particularly sensitive to the combined inhibition of VEGFR and PDGFR. As for the neutral outcomes [14], Spano et al. used the gemcitabine + axitinib to treat the APC [21]. However, results differ from the results of Phase III trials in which erlotinib + gemcitabine confers the greatest survival advantage for patients with ECOG status 2 and metastatic disease, it possibly due to the mechanism of action between different EGFR and VEGFR inhibitors. Moreover, Hobday et al. found that the median PFS in the gefitinib trial was only 3.7 months which was even lower than the placebo group in the phase III trial [22].

With respect to the failed outcomes, Kindler et al. found that the effect of axitinib and gemcitabine on APC was limited to improve the survival period in patients with locally APC [43]. In fact, the results may be related to the gene locus of the VEGF receptor 1 tyrosine kinase domain. Furthermore, Ropugier et al. found that PFS was not significantly improved between the treatment arms. It indicates that blocking the VEGF/VEGFR axis does not lead to the survival of a patient with APC [45]. Noonan et al. study shows that pelareorep combination chemotherapy is not a sufficient solution to overcome the severe immunosuppression prevalent in PCA patients [46].

6.2 Epidermal growth factor receptor, EGFR

EGFR is one of the transmembrane receptors of epidermal growth factor family members of extracellular protein ligands. Its main function is to regulate various cellular functions including proliferation, movement and differentiation. Its mechanism can be described as the binding of the ligand to EGFR leading to dimerization followed by autophosphorylation of EGFR and activation of downstream signaling pathways. Activation of EGFR triggers multiple signal cascades within the cell, ultimately leading to gene transcription and biological responses [47]. Recently, studies have shown that dimerization occurs even in the absence of ligands, particularly when EGFR is overexpressed, possibly limited to a subset of dimers. Moreover, overexpressed EGFR can dimerize and become tyrosine phosphorylated without ligand [48].
EGFR signal transduction pathway can directly participate in tumor pathogenesis and progression [49]. EGFR overexpression plays a major role in carcinogenesis in cancer development [50]. Overexpression of EGFR accounts for 90% in pancreatic cancer cells [51]. Specifically, the aberrant activity of EGFR may impact the development and growth of tumor cells [52].

Mutation of EGFR may induce the resistance of tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs) [53]. Notably, in tumor angiogenesis, vascular endothelial growth factor receptor-2 (VEGFR-2) plays a key role, and inhibition of VEGFR-2 signaling pathway has become an attractive cancer treatment method [54]. The binding of VEGF to VEGFR-2 stimulates the signaling pathway (PI3K/Akt, p38MAPK) that mediates several cellular functions. Besides, glycoproteins, EGFR and VEGFR-2 are in close correlation. Inhibition of EGFR can also reduce VEGF expression, while VEGFR-2 targeting can enhance the anticancer activity of EGFR inhibitors. Therefore, the dual inhibition treatment of EGFR and VEGFR-2 has a good effect and represents a promising cancer treatment. Recently, several EGFR/VEGFR-2 dual inhibitors have been discovered, such as vandetanib showing effective inhibitory activity on EGFR and VEGFR-2 [55].

A receptor tyrosine kinase is associated with cell proliferation and survival. Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor, EGFR, is overactive in many epithelial-derived tumors. It has been reported that EGFR is not related to its kinase activity, but rather maintains basal intracellular glucose levels to prevent autophagic death of cells. Despite the presence of chemotherapeutic drugs and tyrosine kinase inhibitors, this function of EGFR allows tumor cells to have higher viability [56]. EGFR inhibitors for cancer therapy are rapidly evolving in the broad context of cancer therapy, and in those patients achieving significant tumor response to EGFR inhibitors. Most patients will eventually exhibit disease progression, suggesting acquired resistance. This reminds us that increasing our ability to recognize tumors that depend on EGFR signaling growth is critical for the best choice of treating patients [57].

Unfortunately, two clinical trials showed that the results failed via EGFR. Studies by Ko et al. showed that subjects treated by cetuximab, bevacizumab and gemcitabine had 5.41 months in OS and 4.17 months in PFS. Propper et al. in 2014 tested Erlotinib to treat APC, and only achieved 4.0 months of OS and 1.5 months of PFS. Table 4 [44, 58]. Ko reported the incidence of severe (grades 3–5) toxicity, comparable to the use of gemcitabine as a single agent in this patient population which may reflect a relatively short duration of treatment due to lack of efficacy. Moreover, it is difficult to explain the quality of life analysis based on the number of patients completing the series of questionnaires and the overall time the patients stayed in the study [44]. Propper concluded that there is limited evidence to support the use of predictive biomarkers for patients with pancreatic cancer who could benefit from targeted therapies [58].

6.3 Kirsten rat sarcoma viral oncogene homolog, KRAS

KRAS protein plays a key role in human cancer but has not yet succumbed to therapeutic attacks [59]. The search is now focused on targeting alternative pathways that are activated in mtKRAS cells, to circumvent or prevent drug resistance [60].

There are currently no therapeutic interventions for KRAS. Pharmacological agents that are speculated to inhibit KRAS include farnesyltransferase inhibitors that block the binding of KRAS to the cell membrane. These drugs have failed in clinical studies. Antisense oligonucleotides and engineered microRNAs (miRNAs) have been used as an alternative to targeted mutations in KRAS without disrupting
the expression of non-mutant KRAS and have achieved some success in preclinical trials [70].

In recent years, many studies have suggested that the oncogene KRAS plays a major role in controlling cancer metabolism by coordinating multiple metabolic changes [71]. Furthermore, combined inhibition of therapeutic effects and feedback pathways is promising in KRAS mutant cancers. Moreover, it is unclear what specific pathways should be used to optimize treatment response [72].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>OS</th>
<th>PFS</th>
<th>Biomarkers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Kindler [43]</td>
<td>314</td>
<td>191</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>Gemcitabine; AG-013736</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>316</td>
<td>188</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>Gemcitabine; placebo</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2012</td>
<td>Ko [44]</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Cetuximab; bevacizumab</td>
<td>5.41</td>
<td>4.17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>29</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Cetuximab; bevacizumab</td>
<td>3.55</td>
<td>1.91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Rougier [45]</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>Placebo; gemcitabine</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>271</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>Aflibercept; gemcitabine</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Wu [61]</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Etanercept; gemcitabine</td>
<td>5.43</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Gemcitabine</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Propper [58]</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>Erlotinib</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>103</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>Placebo</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Infante [62]</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>Gemcitabine; GSK1120212</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>16.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>Placebo; gemcitabine</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>15.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Wolpin [63]</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Hydroxychloroquine 400 mg</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Hydroxychloroquine 600 mg</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Catenacci [64]</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Gemcitabine hydrochloride;</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>53</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Placebo</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>53</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Gemcitabine hydrochloride;</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vismodegib</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2016</td>
<td>Noonan [46]</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>wild-type reovirus; carboplatin; paclitaxel</td>
<td>7.31</td>
<td>4.94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>37</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Carboplatin; paclitaxel</td>
<td>8.77</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Chung [65]</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Fluorouracil; oxaliplatin</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>58</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>Akt inhibitor MK2206; selumetinib</td>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Faivre [66]</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>Sunitinib malate</td>
<td>38.6</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>Placebo</td>
<td>29.1</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Ko [67]</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>OGX-427</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>66</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>Placebo</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Laquente [68]</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>LY2603618; gemcitabine</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>34</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Gemcitabine</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2018</td>
<td>Van Cutsem [69]</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Gemcitabine; placebo</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>44</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>Gemcitabine; pimasertib</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.
Clinical trial failed outcome on pancreatic cancer.
Unfortunately, Chung et al. tested pharmaceutical target via KRAS protein, whereas the result was unsuccessful. The results showed that the OS and PFS of patients treated by Akt Inhibitor MK2206 and selumetinib were 3.9 and 1.9 months, respectively, see Table 4 [65]. The results indicated that the strategy of utilizing two or more kinase inhibitors is subject to the challenge of toxicity overlap. These toxicities will significantly block the delivery of effective inhibitory amounts of both drugs in vivo. However, a major disadvantage factor is the delay in toxicity-related treatment and the frequency of dose reduction in the experimental group through damaging sustained signal suppression [65].

7. Conclusion

APC reserves unpredictable mechanisms to maintain a highly resistant phenotype. The genetic and epigenetic alterations of the APC lead to the resistance of the chemotherapy.

Nowadays, many biomarkers have been on board to improve the clinical treatment outcome of advanced pancreatic cancer. Although these successful biomarkers have provided notable therapeutic effects on advanced pancreatic cancer, the outcomes remain unsatisfactory to the patients and health providers. With the development of the biology of advanced pancreatic cancer, we now expect better biomarkers and conduct therapy by unveiling the tumor microenvironment and the mechanism of the mutations (Figure 1).

We can assume that with the development of truly effective treatments and clinically useful markers for early detection of the disease, better combination of markers to advanced pancreatic cancer. In the meanwhile, researchers are trying to detect magnificently predictive biomarkers to decide the treatment strategy and permit practitioners to adequately evaluate and propose individualized treatment protocols which would give a greater survival rate.

Clearly, there is a need to better understand the underlying signaling networks that drive pancreatic cancer progression and potential escape mechanisms. In addition, it is necessary to improve the role of preclinical models of pancreatic cancer

![Figure 1](image_url)  
*Difficulties in decision making both for R&D and doctors.*
and the optimal transformation of preclinical success into experimental design. The genetic and proteomic technologies show great potential to detect the novel biomarkers in cancer research. We place great expectations on these technologies to personalize treatment for advanced pancreatic cancer patients.

Acknowledgements

This work was supported by the Chengdu Medical College Natural Science Foundation (CYZ18-08, CYZ18-20, CYZ18-33), the Sichuan Provincial Education Department (17ZA0134), the Sichuan Medical Association (S18023), and Sichuan undergraduate innovation and startup program funding support (S201913705080, S201913705130, S201913705059).

Authors’ contribution

XF developed the general idea and drafted the manuscript with CJ; YLQ and DYX searched the reference, HK sort the clinical trials data, PTT and ZS participated in drafting process and double check the data; LFF drew the figure; GM proofread the manuscript and ensure the general quality.

Competing interests

The authors declare that they have no competing interests.

Ethics statement

Not applicable.

Consent for publication

Not applicable.

Availability of data and material

All data will be made available upon reasonable request.
and the optimal transformation of preclinical success into experimental design. The genetic and proteomic technologies show great potential to detect the novel bio-markers in cancer research. We place great expectations on these technologies to personalize treatment for advanced pancreatic cancer patients.

Acknowledgements

This work was supported by the Chengdu Medical College Natural Science Foundation (CYZ18-08, CYZ18-20, CYZ18-33), the Sichuan Provincial Education Department (17ZA0134), the Sichuan Medical Association (S18023), and Sichuan undergraduate innovation and startup program funding support (S201913705080, S201913705130, S201913705059).

Authors’ contribution

XF developed the general idea and drafted the manuscript with CJ; YLQ and DYX searched the reference, HK sort the clinical trials data, PTT and ZS participated in drafting process and double check the data; LFF drew the figure; GM proofread the manuscript and ensure the general quality.

Competing interests

The authors declare that they have no competing interests.

Ethics statement

Not applicable.

Consent for publication

Not applicable.

Availability of data and material

All data will be made available upon reasonable request.

Author details

Jie Chen, Liqiong Yang, Yuxi Duan, Tinging Pu, Sha Zheng, Fangfang Liu, Kun Huang, Greg Mirt and Fan Xu

1 School of Chinese Medicine, Li Ka Shing Faculty of Medicine, The University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong, China

2 Department of Orthopedics, Shanghai Institute of Traumatology and Orthopedics, Ruijin Hospital, Shanghai Jiaotong University School of Medicine, Shanghai, China

3 School of Pharmacy, Chengdu Medical College, Sichuan, China

4 Art College, Southwest Minzu University, Chengdu, Sichuan, China

5 Department of Software, Chengdu TME Co., Ltd, China

6 Neuro Occupational Activity Centre Novo Mesto, Slovenia

7 Department of Public Health, Chengdu Medical College, Sichuan, China

*Address all correspondence to: xufan@cmc.edu.cn

† These authors contributed equally.

© 2019 The Author(s). Licensee IntechOpen. This chapter is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.
References


Journal of Clinical Oncology. 2015;33: 1551-1556


[41] Semenza GL. Defining the role of hypoxia-inducible factor 1 in cancer biology and therapeutics. Oncogene. 2010;29:625-634


thienopyrimidine derivatives as dual EGFR and VEGFR-2 inhibitors: Design, synthesis, anticancer activity and effect on cell cycle profile. Journal of Enzyme Inhibition and Medicinal Chemistry. 2019;34:838-852


Section 2

Clinical Challenges
Chapter 6
An Overview of Pediatric CNS Malignancies
Neha Sharma and Deepti Sharma

Abstract
Central nervous system tumours are the most common solid tumours and second most common malignancy in pediatric age group. They are the leading cause of cancer related morbidity and mortality. It accounts for 3.5% of all deaths in the 1–14 years age group. Childhood central nervous system (CNS) tumors differ significantly from adult brain tumors in reference to their sites of origin, clinical presentation, tendency to disseminate early, histological features and their biological behaviour. Supratentorial tumors are more common in infants and children up to 3 years of age and again after age 10, whereas between ages 4 and 10 infratentorial tumors are more common. The initial workup of patients with brain tumors must include a complete history, physical examination, imaging and biopsy confirmation of primary. The management of pediatric brain tumours is important due to their high incidence, challenging aspects of surgery and high mortality. Many CNS malignancies, which were once universally fatal are now curable with multimodality approaches that integrate surgery, chemotherapy and radiotherapy. In this chapter, we will discuss these issues in detail and summarize the ongoing efforts to reduce the morbidity and mortality in pediatric CNS tumours.

Keywords: CNS, pediatric, adjuvant, radiation therapy

1. Overview
Tumors of the central nervous system are the most common solid tumors in the pediatric age group and the second most common childhood malignancy. They are the leading cause of morbidity and mortality associated with cancer. Although it affects all ages, the incidence peaks among children between the ages of 3 and 7. In adults and older children, most tumours are supratentorial in location while in young children they are more commonly infratentorial in location [1].

2. Incidence
The incidence of childhood CNS tumor varies from 1.12 to 5.14 cases per 100,000 individuals [2]. Based upon data from the Central Brain Tumor Registry of the United States (CBTRUS), the estimated incidence of primary non-malignant and malignant CNS tumors for children and adolescents up to 19 years of age was 7.18 cases per 100,000 person-year in 2016 [3]. More than 100 different
Chapter 6

An Overview of Pediatric CNS Malignancies

Neha Sharma and Deepti Sharma

Abstract

Central nervous system tumours are the most common solid tumours and second most common malignancy in pediatric age group. They are the leading cause of cancer related morbidity and mortality. It accounts for 3.5% of all deaths in the 1–14 years age group. Childhood central nervous system (CNS) tumors differ significantly from adult brain tumors in reference to their sites of origin, clinical presentation, tendency to disseminate early, histological features and their biological behaviour. Supratentorial tumors are more common in infants and children up to 3 years of age and again after age 10, whereas between ages 4 and 10 infratentorial tumors are more common. The initial workup of patients with brain tumors must include a complete history, physical examination, imaging and biopsy confirmation of primary. The management of pediatric brain tumours is important due to their high incidence, challenging aspects of surgery and high mortality. Many CNS malignancies, which were once universally fatal are now curable with multimodality approaches that integrate surgery, chemotherapy and radiotherapy. In this chapter, we will discuss these issues in detail and summarize the ongoing efforts to reduce the morbidity and mortality in pediatric CNS tumours.

Keywords: CNS, pediatric, adjuvant, radiation therapy

1. Overview

Tumors of the central nervous system are the most common solid tumors in the pediatric age group and the second most common childhood malignancy. They are the leading cause of morbidity and mortality associated with cancer. Although it affects all ages, the incidence peaks among children between the ages of 3 and 7. In adults and older children, most tumours are supratentorial in location while in young children they are more commonly infratentorial in location [1].

2. Incidence

The incidence of childhood CNS tumor varies from 1.12 to 5.14 cases per 100,000 individuals [2]. Based upon data from the Central Brain Tumor Registry of the United States (CBTRUS), the estimated incidence of primary non-malignant and malignant CNS tumors for children and adolescents up to 19 years of age was 7.18 cases per 100,000 person-year in 2016 [3]. More than 100 different
Current Cancer Treatment

148

3. Etiology and pathogenesis

Development of brain tumours occurs as a consequence of cellular genetic alterations that allow them to evade normal regulatory mechanisms and destruction by the immune system. These changes may be caused by an inherited or acquired (chemical, physical or biological neuro-carcinogens) cause. Overall, only a very small percentage of brain tumors can be ascribed to the effect of inherited inclination (Table 2). The different environmental factors involved and alleged typically involve ionizing radiation, non-ionizing radiation, N-nitroso compounds, viral infections (JC virus, cytomegalovirus, HIV, SV-40, varicella-zoster, chicken pox) and head injury [6].
Current Cancer Treatment

Histological subtypes of CNS tumours are recognized but their incidence varies with age. Incidence in Africa is around 11 per 10,000 and in Japan and Europe it ranges from 20 to 30 per 1,000,000. The male to female ratio is 1.25:1, as slightly higher frequency of medulloblastoma and CNS germinoma is seen in boys [4].

The most common histological subtypes along with location are mentioned below (Table 1).

### 3. Etiology and pathogenesis

Development of brain tumours occurs as a consequence of cellular genetic alterations that allow them to evade normal regulatory mechanisms and destruction by the immune system. These changes may be caused by an inherited or acquired (chemical, physical or biological neuro-carcinogens) cause. Overall, only a very small percentage of brain tumors can be ascribed to the effect of inherited inclination (Table 2). The different environmental factors involved and alleged typically involve ionizing radiation, non-ionizing radiation, N-nitroso compounds, viral infections (JC virus, cytomegalovirus, HIV, SV-40, varicella-zoster, chicken pox) and head injury [6].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Tumor type</th>
<th>Relative frequency (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supratentorial</td>
<td>Pilocytic astrocytoma</td>
<td>23.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fibrillary astrocytoma</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ganglioganglioma</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dysembryoplastic neuroepithelial tumor</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Desmoplastic infantile ganglioglioma</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Choroid plexus papilloma</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ependymoma</td>
<td>3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anaplastic ependymoma</td>
<td>3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anaplastic astrocytoma</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glioblastoma</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Supratentorial PNET</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior fossa</td>
<td>Medulloblastoma</td>
<td>16.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ATRT</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pilocytic astrocytoma</td>
<td>23.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ependymoma</td>
<td>3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brainstem glioma</td>
<td>10–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pineal tumours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Germ cell tumour</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pineal parenchymal tumour</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suprasellar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Craniopharyngioma</td>
<td>5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Optic hypothalamic glioma</td>
<td>3–6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Common brain tumor types with location and frequency [5].

### 4. Pathology and classification

**Astrocytic tumors**

- subependymal giant cell astrocytoma
- pilocytic astrocytoma
- Pilomyxoid astrocytoma
- diffuse astrocytoma
- pleomorphic xanthoastrocytoma
- anaplastic astrocytoma
- glioblastoma
- giant cell glioblastoma
- gliosarcoma

**Oligodendroglial tumors**

- oligodendroglioma
- anaplastic oligodendroglioma

**Oligoastrocytic tumors**

- oligoastrocytoma
- anaplastic oligoastrocytoma

**Ependymal tumors**

- subependymoma

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syndrome</th>
<th>Gene locus</th>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Type of CNS tumour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NF type 1</td>
<td>17q11</td>
<td>NF1</td>
<td>Neurofibroma, meningioma, optic nerve glioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NF2</td>
<td>22q12</td>
<td>NF2</td>
<td>Meningioma, schwannoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TS</td>
<td>9q34, 16p13</td>
<td>TSc1/TSC2</td>
<td>SEGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VHL</td>
<td>3p35</td>
<td>VHL</td>
<td>Haemangioblastoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li-Fraumani</td>
<td>17q13</td>
<td>p53</td>
<td>Glioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gorlin's syndrome</td>
<td>9q31</td>
<td></td>
<td>PNET</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2. CNS tumour along with gene involved.
• myxopapillary ependymoma
• ependymoma
• anaplastic ependymoma

**Choroid plexus tumors**
• choroid plexus papilloma
• atypical choroid plexus papilloma
• choroid plexus carcinoma

**Other neuroepithelial tumors**
• astroblastoma
• angiocentric glioma
• chordoid glioma of the third ventricle

**Neuronal and mixed neuronal-glial tumors**
• gangliocytoma
• ganglioglioma
• Anplastic ganglioglioma
• desmoplastic infantile astrocytoma and ganglioglioma
• dysembryplastic neuroepithelial tumor
• central neurocytoma
• extraventricular neurocytoma
• cerebellar liponeurocytoma
• paraganglioma of the spinal cord
• papillary glioneuronal tumor
• Rosette-forming glioneuronal tumor of the fourth ventricle

**Pineal tumors**
• pineocytoma
• pineal parenchymal tumor of intermediate differentiation
• pineoblastoma
• papillary tumor of the pineal region

**Embryonal tumors**
• medulloblastoma
• CNS primitive neuroectodermal tumors
• atypical teratoid/rhabdoid tumor

**Tumors of cranial and paraspinal nerves**
• Schwannoma
• neurofibroma
• perineuroma
• malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumors

**Meningeal tumors**
• tumors of meningothelial cells
• mesenchymal tumors
• primary melanocytic lesions
• other neoplasms related to the meninges
• hemangioblastoma

**Lymphoma and hematopoietic neoplasms**
• malignant lymphoma
• plasmacytoma
• granulocytic sarcoma

**Germ cell tumors**
• germinoma
• embryonal carcinoma
• yolk-sac tumors
• choriocarcinoma
Current Cancer Treatment

- teratoma
- mixed germ cell tumor

**Tumors of the sellar region**

- craniopharyngioma
- granular cell tumor of the neurohypophysis
- pituicytoma
- spindle cell oncocytoma of the adenohypophysis

**Metastatic tumors**

Modified from the WHO Classification of Tumors of the CNS, 2007 [7].

5. Clinical manifestations

The most common presenting symptoms of pediatric brain tumours are due to increased intracranial pressure. Headache and vomiting are two well-known symptoms associated with elevated intracranial pressure. Other signs, which reflect the increase in intracranial pressure, include drowsiness, confusion, nausea, sixth nerve palsy, papilledema, generalized seizures, and cognitive impairment. Focal signs and symptoms reflect the effect of the tumor on specific structures [8].

6. Radiological diagnosis

The features that play an important role in establishing the diagnosis are the age of the patient, location of the tumor and the imaging characteristics. Supratentorial tumors are more common in neonates and infants up to 2 years old, whereas infratentorial tumors are more common in children older than 2 years. Although some tumors may be found both supra- and infratentorially. Tumors that are considered mostly supratentorial and intraaxial include astrocytomas, such as diffuse astrocytoma, anaplastic astrocytoma, pleomorphic xanthoastrocytoma (PXA), subependymal giant cell astrocytoma (SEGA), and glioblastoma multi-forme (GBM); oligodendrocytoma; primitive neuroectodermal tumor (PNET); dysembryo-plastic neuroepithelial tumor (DNET); ganglioglioma; and desmoplastic infantile ganglioglioma. Some supratentorial extraaxial masses include arachnoid cysts, pineal region masses, and choroid plexus tumors.

Imaging is an important aspect in the management of patients with brain tumors. Imaging workup is largely based upon CT and MRI of the lesion. The technical development of CT and MRI methods has greatly enhanced brain tumor detection and sophisticated neuroimaging offers extra data by determining the metabolism and physiology of these lesions, which helps to diagnose and monitor brain neoplasms [9].

7. Computed tomography (CT)

CT scan plays an important role in establishing diagnosis of brain tumours. It can detect both blood and calcification. But some tumors, particularly tumors of
the brainstem, cerebellum, and suprasellar region as well as infiltrative tumors of the white matter, can be missed on CT neuroimaging [10].

7.1 MRI

It is the standard of care in children for imaging of suspected brain tumours. The most useful imaging studies are T1-weighted sagittal images, gadolinium (Gd)-enhanced and unenhanced T1 axial images, T2-weighted axial images, and fluid-attenuated inversion recovery (FLAIR) sequences.

T1 images usually are better at demonstrating anatomy and areas of contrast enhancement. T2 and FLAIR images are more sensitive for detecting edema and infiltrative tumor.

7.2 Perfusion MRI

It plays an important role in differentiating low-grade tumors from high-grade tumors. It evaluates several hemodynamic parameters including cerebral blood volume (CBV), cerebral blood flow (CBF), and mean transit time (MTT); however, CBV has been shown to be the most useful parameter for the evaluation of intracranial masses [11].

7.3 Functional MRI

It detects functional areas of the brain by identifying areas of brain activation which have increased blood flow and changes in cerebral metabolism. It is used to determine the extent of resection as it can prevent any functional compromise. It is essential for planning function-preserving surgery in patients with brain tumours [12].

7.4 Magnetic resonance spectroscopy

It is useful in the evaluation of brain tumors in pediatric patients by helping determine the diagnosis, grade, and extent of the tumor. MRS can also differentiate radiation necrosis from tumor recurrence because normal metabolite levels after treatment favor edema and postsurgical changes [13].

7.5 Positron emission tomography (PET)

PET has clearly defined roles in primary brain tumor imaging. The FDG uptake of high-grade gliomas is more as compared with low-grade or well-differentiated neoplasms, and FDG-PET can be useful in making a distinction between low- and high-grade gliomas [14].

A few limitations of FDG-PET as a cerebral imaging agent are that normal brain tissue has high physiologic glucose metabolic rate producing a high FDG uptake which may mask smaller lesions. Another issue is in the detection of tumors with only modest increases in glucose metabolism, such as low-grade tumors which may be difficult to interpret [15]. 18F-fluoroethyl-L-thyrosin (18F-FET) is a promising radiotracer in determining the grade of brain tumors.

7.6 Cerebral fluid analysis

Chemistry and cytology of the cerebral fluid are used to determine the spread of the tumor. Findings may be important in subsequent treatment approaches.
8. Histologic confirmation of diagnosis

Histopathologic diagnosis of brain tumours is necessary for decision making regarding appropriate management. Stereotactic biopsy has emerged as a comparatively safe method of histological diagnosis and has significantly reduced the risks associated with brain biopsy [16]. Tissue sampling can be obtained either with stereotactic, open, or endoscopic procedures and, overall, provides.

Greater than 90% diagnostic yield, while it may be significantly lower (60–70%) in small (<1 cm³) and/or heterogeneous lesions [17].

8.1 Open biopsy

It is performed as an open technique by intraoperative neuronavigation. Typically, it is asserted for surface brain lesion, where hemostasis is critically vital or a surgical resection depending on frozen section histopathology is arranged. Although morbidity and mortality of open biopsy is more as compared to stereotactic biopsy but neoplastic tissue yield is better and it influences the likelihood of an accurate diagnosis.

8.2 Stereotactic biopsy

It can be frame based and frameless. The frame-based method is focused on the fixation of the stereotactic frame on the patient’s head, whereupon the localizer is attached to the frame with many N-shaped posts. Under stereotactic circumstances, neuroimaging (CT, MRI, positron emission tomography [PET], etc.) is carried out and radiological information is transmitted to the specialized computer platform. The localizer posts are used as space coordinate references. For optimizing the target location and defining the ideal trajectory for biopsy, multiple pictures are combined.

The frameless biopsies are generally technically easier and require less preparatory efforts in comparison to frame-based ones [18].

8.3 Endoscopic biopsy

It is recommended for intra- and periventricular tumors and can be done with or without frameless stereotactic guidance. The advantages of this technique are

1. direct visualization of the lesion
2. vascular structures can be seen during tissue sampling
3. more pathological specimens can be taken.
4. cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) samples can be taken for tumor marker analysis

In case obstructive hydrocephalus, third ventriculostomy can be simultaneously done [10]. Exception may be produced in chosen patients such as patients with known active systemic cancer and numerous lesions radiographically associated with brain metastases, patients with classic clinical and MRI results of brain stem glioma or optic nerve meningioma, HIV-positive patients with CT or MRI results consistent with primary CNS lymphoma and positive Epstein-Barr virus polymerase chain reaction in the CSF, or patients with secretory germ-cell tumors [19].
9. Differential diagnosis

9.1 Infectious

Abscess—fever, acutely ill, ± systemic infection, CT findings show cyst cavity with smooth thin walls and restricted diffusion within cavity.

Cerebritis—fever, acutely ill, ± systemic infection, MRI findings show diffuse T2 change, no mass meningitis—diffuse enhancement of meninges on T1-weighted imaging.

9.2 Vascular

Infarct—MRI findings show Gray and white matter involvement, wedge like vascular distribution associated with restricted diffusion and low signal.

Subdural hematoma: anemia, retinal hemorrhage.

Bleeding—homogenous, clears quickly, residual hemosiderin ring.

Treatment-related necrosis—central hypodensity, edema, >6 months after radiation therapy or chemotherapy, metabolic scan shows low activity.

9.3 Neoplasm

Primary—solitary, no prior cancer.

Metastatic—multiple, prior cancer, ++ edema, located at gray/white junction
dehydromellite: headache, vomiting, subarachnoid hemorrhage, Guillain-Barré syndrome tuberculosis: exposure to tuberculosis.

Pseudotumor cerebri: after otitis media, hormonal abnormalities.

10. General management

A focused history and symptom-based neurological examination is required which may be sufficient to raise brain tumor suspicion. Mental status assessment, cranial nerves, motor skills, sensory examination, coordination, and gait are key components of the neurological examination.

Preoperative laboratory testing which includes a complete blood cell count, renal and hepatic profile. A baseline ophthalmologic evaluation, including visual field testing and fundoscopic evaluation, is important in preoperative evaluations because most patients do not complain of visual field deficits at presentation. Glucocorticoids are used to control neurologic signs and symptoms caused by cerebral edema.

Although there is little evidence to support the use of corticosteroids with regard to overall outcome, corticosteroids can relieve headache, nausea, and vomiting and remain a generally accepted treatment.

In assessing a child suspected of having a brain tumor, a thorough neurological examination is of critical importance. Most kids diagnosed with a brain tumor have abnormal results on the presentation of neurological examination [20].

11. Neurosurgical procedure

Surgery remains the main treatment modality for most pediatric brain tumors. Depending on tumor type, the goals of surgical intervention are:

• Tissue diagnosis

• Re-establishment of normal CSF pathways
• Diversion of CSF (shunting)
• Tumor debulking
• Complete tumor resection [5]

In the literature, overall surgical morbidity rates vary from 10 to 54%. The rates highly depend on the location of the tumour, grade and propensity to disseminate [21].

12. Radiotherapy

Radiotherapy plays an important role in the management of pediatric brain tumours. It can be used either as adjuvant treatment in case of resectable tumours or as a definitive management option in case of unresectable tumours [22].

The most common long term side effect of radiotherapy in pediatric age group is neurocognitive dysfunction and upto 20–60% patients suffer from neurocognitive deficit as a long term sequelae of radiotherapy [23]. Sophisticated radiotherapy techniques are warranted for to avoid future negative impacts of radiation on pediatric brain development.

Use of better immobilization and more suitable imaging techniques like high-resolution brain imaging with computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) to accurately define the tumour limits and precisely assess the normal brain structures has greatly improved the degree of efficacy achieved by radiotherapy without increasing the side effects [24].

Technological advancements like use of conformal radiotherapy allows high radiation dose distributions within targeted tissues while simultaneously attempting to reduce dose to surrounding normal tissues. Conformal radiotherapy can be accomplished through a variety of techniques, including intensity-modulated radiotherapy (IMRT), stereotactic radiotherapy and proton beam therapy.

IMRT has shown promise in the treatment of a number of disease sites and is now being investigated in the use of pediatric tumors to reduce long-term toxicity. Stereotactic technique has the ability to reduce the treatment volume as it delivers highly conformal radiation to brain tumours and minimum dose to surrounding brain tissue. It can be delivered as stereotactic radiosurgery in which the entire dose is delivered as a single fraction or as fractionated stereotactic radiotherapy (FSRT) in which the treatment is delivered over weeks with multiple daily fractions. Only small margins of several millimeters are used for brain tumors, greatly reducing the volume of normal brain parenchyma receiving high doses of radiation.

13. Chemotherapy

High-dose chemotherapy with or without support by autologous stem cell transplantation, especially in children below the age of 3 years [25].

Palliative chemotherapy:

• May induce transient remission
• Increases the quality of life
• The benefits of chemotherapy or other treatments must be balanced by consideration of the toxicities
14. Special tumor types astrocytic tumor

Astrocytomas are the most common pediatric brain tumors, accounting for 7–8% of all childhood cancers [26]. Approximately 40% of all pediatric brain tumors are low grade astrocytoma, whereas most common primary CNS malignancy in adults being high grade astrocytoma [7]. Pediatric brain tumors are typically infratentorial, localized predominantly in the posterior fossa and brainstem [27]. Pediatric astrocytic tumours are further sub-classified by WHO grades (Table 3).

14.1 Genomic alterations low grade glioma

1. Most common genomic modification in cases of pilocytic astrocytoma involves activation of \textit{BRAF} and the ERK/MAPK pathway [29].

2. Alternative \textit{BRAF} gene fusions, \textit{RAF1} rearrangements, \textit{RAS} mutations, and \textit{BRAF} V600E point mutations are less commonly observed in such cases [30].

3. Presence of the \textit{BRAF-KIAA1549} fusion gene shows better progression-free survival (PFS) and overall survival (OS) [31].

4. Other pediatric low-grade gliomas (e.g., pilomyxoid astrocytoma) are also associated with \textit{BRAF} low-grade glioma fusions, the most common alterations reported are rearrangements in the MYB family of transcription factors [33].

Children having mutation in one of two tuberous sclerosis genes (\textit{TSC1}/hamartin or \textit{TSC2}/tuberin) are at a risk of developing Subependymal giant cell astrocytomas, cortical tubers, and subependymal nodules, as either of these mutations results in activation of the mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) complex 1 [34].

14.2 High grade glioma

The following pediatric high-grade glioma subgroups were identified on the basis of their DNA methylation patterns, and they show distinctive molecular and clinical characteristics:

1. Histone K27-mutation: \textit{H3.3 (H3F3A) and H3.1 (HIST1H3B and, rarely, HIST1H3C) mutation at K27}. These cases occur predominantly in mid

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Astrocytic tumour</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subependymal giant cell astrocytoma</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilocytic astrocytoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilomyxoid astrocytoma</td>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffuse astrocytoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleomorphic xanthoastrocytoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anaplastic astrocytoma</td>
<td>III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glioblastoma giant glioblastoma gliosarcoma</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3. \textit{WHO grades of pediatric astrocytic tumours} [28].
childhood (median age, approximately 10 years). They are almost exclusively midline, usually present in the thalamus, brain stem, and spinal cord, and carry a very poor prognosis.

H3.3K27M cases are usually present between ages 5 and 10 years, accounting for approximately 60% of cases in the midline and pons. The prognosis for H3.3K27M patients is extremely poor, with a median survival of <1 year [35].

H3.1K27M cases present at a younger age than H3.3K27M cases and are approximately 5 times less frequent. These cases have a slightly more favorable prognosis than do H3.3K27M cases (median survival, 15 vs. 11 months).

2. **H3.3 (H3F3A) mutation at G34**: The H3.3G34 subtype is associated with mutations in TP53 and ATRX which show widespread hypomethylation across the whole genome. It is common in older children and young adults (median age, 14–18 years) and arises exclusively in the cerebral cortex [36].

About 5% pediatric high-grade gliomas have IDH1-mutation. They are almost exclusively common in older adolescents (median age in a pediatric population, 16 years).

**Pleomorphic xanthoastrocytoma (PXA)-like**: Approximately 10% of pediatric high-grade gliomas have DNA methylation patterns that are PXA-like [37].

### 15. Treatment

#### 15.1 Low-grade astrocytomas

Low-grade astrocytomas (grade I [pilocytic] and grade II) spread by direct extension; dissemination to other CNS sites is uncommon. Complete excision is the treatment of choice and the outcome is favorable especially if the tumor is circumscribed [38].

Markers of poor prognosis for childhood low-grade astrocytomas are:

1. Young age.
2. Diffuse histology, especially IDH-mutant.
3. Inability to obtain a complete resection.
4. Diencephalic syndrome.
5. Intracranial hypertension at initial presentation [39].

#### 15.2 High-grade astrocytomas

Gross total resection is recommended for anaplastic astrocytomas. Local invasion of adjacent brain tissue is relatively common. Prognosis is poor for younger patients.

Depending on the degree of resectability, other treatment options are:

- Radiotherapy usually causes short-term and partial remission.
Multijagent chemotherapy improve survivability with variable long-term remission

Effective drugs alone or in combination: cisplatin, carboplatin, cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide, etoposide, topotecan, procarbazine, temozolomide, lomustine (CCNU), carmustine (BCNU) [40].

15.3 Optic-hypothalamic glioma

Optic pathway-hypothalamic gliomas are rare astrocytic tumors that are more among young children. They comprise approximately 2% of all central nervous system tumors and account for 3–5% of pediatric intracranial tumors.

OPG was classified by Dodge et al. into the following three stages: (A) limited to the optic nerve; (B) involving optic chiasma (with or without extension to the optic nerve) and (C) involvement of hypothalamus and other structures [41].

The tumours do not produce symptoms at an early stage. The symptoms can be due to impingement on optic nerve or chiasma which leads to visual disturbances, involvement of hypothalamus causing endocrinopathies and hypothalamic dysfunction such as the diencephalic syndrome. It can also cause CSF outflow block leading to hydrocephalus [42].

Surgery has a limited role in the treatment of these tumors as they lie close to critical structures. It is usually limited to establishing a histopathological diagnosis or debulking in case of large tumours. Although gross total resection of low-grade glioma is strongly associated with improvement of both OS and PFS but Aggressive resection, often leads to blindness, hypothalamic damage and cognitive dysfunctions [43].

15.3.1. Chemotherapy

Carboplatin and Vincristine is the most frequently recommended first-line chemotherapy, and it is considered to be the standard treatment of OPG [44].

15.3.2. Radiation

Radiotherapy is considered as a treatment option for OPG but at a cost of long term complications of neurocognitive dysfunction and visual disturbances [45]. Radiation may therefore be useful for an adjuvant treatment in the case of chemotherapy refractory tumors. Prognosis depends upon the age of the patient and location of the tumour. Young age and tumour located in optic pathway and hypothalamus are considered as poor prognostic factors.

16. Brain stem tumors

Pediatric brainstem gliomas occur as two major types:
Focal brainstem gliomas, usually WHO grade I–II tumors.
Diffuse intrinsic pontine gliomas, range from WHO grade III–IV [46]. They usually arise in the medulla, pons, or midbrain.

Focal brainstem gliomas (FBSG): constitutes approximately 20% of pediatric brainstem gliomas and usually occur outside the pons. Most are either pilocytic astrocytomas (grade I) or fibrillary astrocytomas (grade II) [47].

FBSG is usually insidious in nature and the symptoms are related to site of tumour location. Most common symptoms include neck stiffness, cranial nerve deficit and contralateral hemiparesis.
Hydrocephalus is uncommon except in posterior exophytic tumours [48]. On MRI, FBSG can be seen with defined borders, lack of surrounding edema, iso- or hypointensity on T1, hyperintensity on T2, and homogeneous contrast enhancement [49].

Surgical resection has emerged as treatment of choice due to development of modern imaging and neurosurgical techniques. FBSG confined to cervicomedullary region and/or exophytic are amenable to complete resection [50] even with incomplete resection, the long-term prognosis for this patient population is excellent.

Chemotherapy can be used as adjuvant after complete or incomplete tumour resection or in cases of tumour progression. Most commonly used chemotherapy regimen is vincristine and carboplatin, which achieves at least stable disease in 68–75% of patients, and a positive response in about 40% [51]. Other regimens comprise of 6-thioguanine, procarbazine, lomustine, and vincristine (TPCV), vinblastine [52], bevacizumab with or without irinotecan [53], everolimus [54], and a metronomic, oral, anti-angiogenic regimen consisting of celecoxib, thalidomide, fenofibrate, cyclophosphamide, and etoposide [55].

Radiation therapy (RT), while often effective in inducing prolonged remission in FBSG, has severe associated toxicities, especially for young children.

**Diffuse intrinsic pontine gliomas (DIPG)** account for approximately 80% of pediatric brainstem tumors and with male to female ratio as 1:1. It is more common in younger age group. These tumors are almost always highly malignant and fatal [56]. The patients have DIPG have a more lethal and shorter duration course than FBSG as it is more aggressive disease. Patients usually present within 3 months of tumour development. The most common symptoms are cranial nerve palsies, most often of cranial nerves VI and VII but sometimes including III, IV, IX, and/or X, as well as long tract signs like hemiparesis.

On CT scan, DIPG appears isodense or hypodense, without calcifications. On MRI, DIPG is most often hypointense on T1 and hyperintense on T2. Contrast enhancement is variable in both modalities but is usually not diffusely uniform, as it often is in FBSG. Diffusion is most often increased [57].

Apart from medical management starting with dexamethsone, aimed to relieve neurological symptoms, not many treatment options are available. RT is the only therapy proven to prolong survival of patients, that too it is palliative in nearly every case.

Currently, RT is given at a dose of 54–59 Gy at 1.8 Gy daily fractions for 30–33 days locally, to the area of the tumor plus a 1–2 cm surrounding margin.

Chemotherapy has not shown any benefit in concurrent, adjuvant or palliative form.

The prognosis for DIPG patients remains devastatingly poor. Recent studies have shown median progression free survival of 7 months and an overall survival of 9–11 months. In one large series, 77% of patients responded to treatment, and it was for a transient period as the therapy is rarely curative [58]. Poor prognostic marker at diagnosis or post treatment is the presence of leptomeningeal disease and no studies confirm these patients will benefit from craniospinal irradiation [59].

### 17. Medulloblastoma

Medulloblastoma is the second most common central nervous system tumour of childhood, most commonly occurring between 4 and 7 years of age. It usually arises from the roof of the fourth ventricle or from the midline structures of the brain [60].

Etiology: for most patients the etiology is unknown but is associated with certain genetic disorders (i.e., Gorlin syndrome, Turcot syndrome, Li-Fraumeni syndrome, Rubinstein-Taybi syndrome, and ataxia telangiectasia) [61].
It has the propensity to disseminate along the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) pathway, and metastatic disease at diagnosis is found in approximately 30% of patients. Spread outside the central nervous system (CNS) is very rare at diagnosis.

WHO classification 2007 categorises medulloblastoma as grade IV neoplasms under the group of embryonal neuroepithelial tumours. There are several histopathological subtypes of medulloblastoma. In addition to classic variant, other subtypes include desmoplastic/nodular medulloblastoma, medulloblastoma with extensive nodularity (MBEN), anaplastic medulloblastoma, and large cell medulloblastoma [25].

Molecular subgrouping of medulloblastoma divides it into four distinct subgroups which are identified on the basis of transcriptional profiling studies as wingless (Wnt), sonic hedgehog (Shh), Group 3, and Group 4 (Table 4). Each subgroup is defined by a unique set of demographic and clinical features, genetics, and gene expression [63].

Signs and symptoms: usually due to increased intracranial tension, hydrocephalus and cerebellar dysfunction, and comprise vomiting, macrocephalus, loss of developmental achievements in infants, and headache, vomiting, ataxia, and cranial nerve palsy in older patients.

Management: biopsy has no role in the diagnosis if it is radiographically supported. Medulloblastomas have distinct imaging characteristics on both computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Since 75% of medulloblastomas arise from the cerebellar vermis, they tend to protrude into the fourth ventricle in pediatric age group. On CT scan, in case of young patients, effacement of the fourth ventricle is seen along with its dilatation which is secondary to obstructive hydrocephalus. In case of older patients, they are most commonly seen as a hyperdense mass arising from the vermis with cyst formation or necrosis.

On MRI, medulloblastomas are hypointense to grey matter on T1-weighted imaging with heterogeneous gadolinium enhancement on T2-weighted imaging.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Percentage</th>
<th>WNT</th>
<th>SHH</th>
<th>GROUP 3</th>
<th>GROUP 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>35%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children and adults</td>
<td>Mainly infants and adults</td>
<td>Mainly infants and children</td>
<td>Mainly children and adults</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somatic nucleotide variant</td>
<td>CTNNBI, DDX3, SMARCA4, CREBBP, TP53*</td>
<td>PTCH1, SUFU, SMO, TERT, IDH1, TP53, KMT2D</td>
<td>SMARCA4, CTDNEPI, KMT2D, KBTBD4</td>
<td>KDM6A, KMT2C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somatic copy number alterations</td>
<td>MYCN, GLI2</td>
<td>MYCN, PVT1, OTX2, GFI1b</td>
<td>SNCAIP, MYCN, CDK6, GFI1b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytogenetics</td>
<td>Monosomy 6</td>
<td>Gain of 3q, 9p, loss of 9q, 10q, 14q, 17p</td>
<td>17q, loss of 8, 10q, 11, 16p, 17q, gain of 1q, 7, 17q, 18q</td>
<td>17q, loss of 8p, 11p, X, gain of 7q, 18q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prognosis</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>Poor</td>
<td>Intermediate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incidence of relapse</td>
<td>5–10%</td>
<td>10–15%</td>
<td>40–45%</td>
<td>35–40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern of metastasis</td>
<td>Local and distal</td>
<td>Local</td>
<td>Distal</td>
<td>Distal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*It shows characteristics of each molecular subgroups of medulloblastoma.

Table 4. Molecular subgroups of medulloblastoma [62].
they appear iso- to hyperintense to grey matter and can seem heterogeneous due to cyst formation, calcification and necrosis. MR spectroscopy shows elevated choline peaks and decreased creatine and N-acetyl acetate peaks, with occasional elevation in lactic acid and lipid peaks [64].

Maximal safe resection is recommended in all medulloblastoma patients. Apart from surgical resection, the current standards of radiation therapy and medical management vary by extent of disease and age of the patient. Radiation therapy can be used to decrease the risk of recurrence but neurocognitive effects of radiation therapy have to be considered by weighing the risk benefit ratio.

Patients who are 3 years of age or older are stratified as either “average-risk” or “high-risk” depending upon postoperative residual tumor volume and the presence or absence of disseminated disease (Table 5).

Patients who are younger than 3 years of age, are treated without upfront radiation therapy due to the unacceptably high risk of severe neurocognitive impairment [65].

In the postoperative setting, average-risk patients >3 years old were previously treated with 36 Gy craniospinal irradiation (CSI) but now a boost to the posterior fossa is given for a total dose of 54 Gy due to the high rate of relapse within the posterior fossa. CSI dose of 23.4–24 Gy can be given with the addition of chemotherapy as supported by Studies conducted by the International Society of Pediatric Oncology (SIOP) and the Children’s Oncology Group [66].

Current recommendations for post-radiation chemotherapy in average-risk patients include approximately 1 year of therapy consisting of 8 cycles at 6-week intervals of cisplatin, lomustine (CCNU), and vincristine. The St. Jude Medulloblastoma-96 trial has demonstrated a similar event-free survival of 83% when an alkylator-based, dose-intensive chemotherapy regimen consisting of four 4-week cycles of cyclophosphamide, cisplatin, and vincristine with autologous stem cell rescue was employed following each cycle [67].

For high risk medulloblastoma cases in children 3 years or older, the treatment is surgical resection followed by post-operative “standard dose” RT (36 Gy CSI with a boost to both the posterior fossa and focal sites of metastatic disease to 55.8 Gy) as well as adjuvant chemotherapy.

The most common adverse effect of craniospinal irradiation in children <3 years age is neurocognitive deficit. Therefore radiotherapy is either delayed or omitted in this subset of patients. There is evidence that regimens consisting of surgery and chemotherapy without RT can be successful in specific subsets of medulloblastoma patients. Outcomes in patients with relapsed disease are generally poor, with reported 5-year survival rates of approximately 25% [68]. Unfavorable prognostic factors include large tumor, csf dissemination, age <4 years, subtotal tumour resection (<90%), chromosome deletion 17p, c-MYC amplification.

### 18. Atypical teratoid rhabdoid tumors (ATRT)

Atypical teratoid rhabdoid tumours (ATRTs) are the most common malignant central nervous system tumours in children ≤1 year of age and represent
approximately 1–2% of all pediatric brain tumours [69]. ATRT is a primarily monogenic disease characterized by the bi-allelic loss of the SMARCB1 gene, which encodes the hSNF5 subunit of the SWI/SNF chromatin remodeling complex [70]. The most common site of ATRT is posterior fossa, mainly cerebellar hemispheres (⅔ cases) [71]. It can also occupy fourth ventricle causing its displacement and compression by invading the adjacent cisternal space.

In patients <3 years of age, the most common treatment is high dose chemotherapy with autologous stem cell rescue, so that CSI can be avoided in young patients as poor outcomes are seen due radiotherapy induced neurocognitive impairment [72]. Despite using chemotherapy and radiotherapy as treatment options, ATRT has poor survival outcomes due to early dissemination and progression of the tumours [73].

### 19. Pineal tumors

Incidence of pineal tumours in children ranges from 2.7 to 11% [74]. Germ cell tumors (GCTs) account for nearly 50–75% of all pineal tumors [75], Pineal parenchymal tumors account for nearly 15–27% of pineal tumors and include pineocytoma, parenchymal tumor of intermediate differentiation, pineoblastoma and papillary tumor of the pineal region. Other described pineal tumors include glioma, ependymoma and atypical teratoid rhabdoid tumors [76].

Preferred treatment strategy of different pineal region tumours [77] (Table 6).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pineoblastoma &lt;3 years</th>
<th>Radiotherapy is avoided Induction chemotherapy followed by consolidation myeloablative chemotherapy with stem cell rescue</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pineoblastoma 3–6 years</td>
<td>Induction chemotherapy followed by consolidation myeloablative chemotherapy with stem cell rescue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pineoblastoma &gt;6 years</td>
<td>Full-dose craniospinal irradiation (36 Gy) plus boost (total of 54 Gy) to the primary site along with concomitant daily carboplatin and weekly vincristine followed by 6 cycles of maintenance chemotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germinoma</td>
<td>Four cycles of chemotherapy with carboplatin and etoposide followed by whole ventricular irradiation to 23.4 Gy plus a boost to the primary site to a total dose of 30 Gy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-germinomatous germ cell tumour</td>
<td>Six cycles of chemotherapy with carboplatin, ifosfamide and etoposide followed by 30 Gy whole ventricular irradiation plus a boost to the primary site to a total dose of 50 Gy in patients with a radiographic and serologic complete response</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6. Treatment strategies of different pineal region tumours.

### 20. Ependymoma

Ependymoma accounts for 6–12% of all brain tumors in childhood. It represents the third most common brain tumor in this age group, following astrocytomas and medulloblastomas [78]. Ependymoma are classified according to the WHO pathological grading system (Table 7).

They are usually located in or adjacent to ventricles within the parenchyma. In pediatric age group majority of intracranial ependymoma are located at infratentorial region in posterior fossa, usually arising at the floor of fourth ventricle.

Prognostic factors include tumor location, size, surrounding anatomical structures, tumor appearance, genotype, comorbidities, clinical symptoms, and patient age [79].
The current treatment of choice for pediatric patients with cranial ependymoma is resection, if possible, followed by radiation therapy alone [80].

21. Craniopharyngioma

They are low histological grade (WHO I) tumours which arise from epithelial remnants of Rathke’s pouch. They are usually located in sellar or parasellar location with an overall incidence of 0.5–2.0 new cases per million of the population per year, and constitute 1.2–4.0% of all childhood intracranial tumors.

Symptoms depend upon the location of the tumour:

Craniopharyngiomas can present with nonspecific symptoms like headache and nausea due to increased intracranial pressure.

Intrasellar lesions can compress the pituitary gland and hypothalamus involving the hypothalamic-pituitary axes in 52–87% cases, leading to endocrine defects, particularly deficits in the secretion of growth hormone (75% of cases), gonadotropins (40%), adrenocorticotropic hormone (25%) and TSH (25%) [81].

Prechiasmal lesions may compress the optic pathway, leading to visual field cuts, decreased central visual acuity or vision impairment (62–84% of cases in children).

Retrochiasmal lesions may grow into the third ventricle and cause hydrocephalus or compress the optic tracts.

Craniopharyngiomas can cause direct impingement of brain parenchyma and produce neurological deficit.

In case of localized tumours the preferred choice of treatment is complete resection with preservation of visual, pituitary and hypothalamic function [82]. In case of incomplete resection, there are chances of residual tumour progression in 71–90% of patients, whereas the rate of progression after incomplete resection followed by radiotherapy is 21%. Therefore radiotherapy is recommended after surgical resection [83].

22. Conclusion

Since brain tumours are a leading cause of morbidity and mortality among children, the focus lies on how effectively they can be treated. Surgery plays a major role and can be curative in a number of tumours including pilocytic astrocytoma. Radiotherapy is curative in cases of PNET and ependymoma.

The survival and long-term outcome of patients with brain tumors will continue to enhance with future advances in nonsurgical methods, molecular and translational oncology research. For longer survival and reduced morbidity, new molecular diagnostics and new therapies such as immunotherapy, gene therapy and stem cell therapy may be promising.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumour type</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subependymoma (benign) myxopapillary ependymoma</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ependymoma</td>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anaplastic ependymoma</td>
<td>III</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7. WHO pathological grades of ependymoma.
The current treatment of choice for pediatric patients with cranial ependymoma is resection, if possible, followed by radiation therapy alone [80].

21. Craniopharyngioma

They are low histological grade (WHO I) tumours which arise from epithelial remnants of rathke's pouch. They are usually located in sellar or parasellar location with an overall incidence of 0.5–2.0 new cases per million of the population per year, and constitute 1.2–4.0% of all childhood intracranial tumors.

Symptoms depend upon the location of the tumour:

- Craniopharyngiomas can present with nonspecific symptoms like headache and nausea due to increased intracranial pressure.
- Intrasellar lesions can compress the pituitary gland and hypothalamus involving the hypothalamic-pituitary axes in 52–87% cases, leading to endocrine defects, particularly deficits in the secretion of growth hormone (75% of cases), gonadotropins (40%), adrenocorticotropic hormone (25%) and TSH (25%) [81].
- Prechiasmal lesions may compress the optic pathway, leading to visual field cuts, decreased central visual acuity or vision impairment (62–84% of cases in children).
- Retrochiasmal lesions may grow into the third ventricle and cause hydrocephalus or compress the optic tracts.
- Craniopharyngiomas can cause direct impingement of brain parenchyma and produce neurological deficit.

In case of localized tumours the preferred choice of treatment is complete resection with preservation of visual, pituitary and hypothalamic function [82]. In case of incomplete resection, there are chances of residual tumour progression in 71–90% of patients, whereas the rate of progression after incomplete resection followed by radiotherapy is 21%. Therefore radiotherapy is recommended after surgical resection [83].

22. Conclusion

Since brain tumours are a leading cause of morbidity and mortality among children, the focus lies on how effectively they can be treated. Surgery plays a major role and can be curative in a number of tumours including pilocytic astrocytoma. Radiotherapy is curative in cases of PNET and ependymoma.

The survival and long-term outcome of patients with brain tumors will continue to enhance with future advances in nonsurgical methods, molecular and translational oncology research. For longer survival and reduced morbidity, new molecular diagnostics and new therapies such as immunotherapy, gene therapy and stem cell therapy may be promising.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumour type Grade</th>
<th>Subependymoma (benign) myxopapillary ependymoma</th>
<th>Ependymoma</th>
<th>Anaplastic ependymoma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WHO pathological grades of ependymoma.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Author details

Neha Sharma¹ and Deepti Sharma²*

1 Department of Radiation Oncology, MAMC and Lok Nayak Hospital, New Delhi, India

2 Department of Radiation Oncology, Max Super Speciality Hospital, New Delhi, India

*Address all correspondence to: drdeeptisharma16@gmail.com
References


Neuropathology & Experimental Neurology. 2012;71:66-72


[46] Green AL, Kieran MW. Pediatric brainstem gliomas: New understanding leads to potential new treatments for two very different tumors. Current Oncology Reports. 2015;17(3)


Options in Neurology. 2012;14:416-426

Medulloblastoma. Current Treatment (St Jude Medulloblastoma-96):
stem-cell rescue in children with high-dose chemotherapy and craniospinal radiotherapy followed by targeted therapies. Annual Review of Neuroscience. 2018;41:207-232


Molecular subgroups to molecular targeted therapies. Annual Review of Neuroscience. 2018;41:207-232

From molecular subgroups to molecular targeted therapies. Annual Review of Neuroscience. 2018;41:207-232


Atypical teratoid/rhabdoid tumors of the central nervous system: Clinical, radiographic and pathologic features. Pediatric Neurosurgery. 2002;37:64-70


Long-term results from a prospective, multicentre trial. The Lancet Oncology. 2006;7:813-820


An Overview of Pediatric CNS Malignancies


Chapter 7
Role of Sentinel Node Biopsy in Endometrial Cancer
Begoña Díaz de la Noval

Abstract
Lymphadenectomy, for early stages of endometrial cancer (EC), provides a low detection rate of lymphatic metastasis, without having demonstrated a therapeutic effect; so that the collection and histological analysis of the sentinel lymph node (SLN) might be an alternative to lymphadenectomy. The contribution of SLN to surgical staging represents a change in the paradigm of lymphadenectomy in EC, being an intermediate approach between not assessing the condition of the lymph nodes and complete pelvic and paraaortic dissection. Accurate identification of the main uterine drainage pathway increases the likelihood of detecting metastases during lymphatic mapping. In addition, pathological assessment by the ultrastaging of the SLN is the most important advance in the SLN biopsy (SLNB) technique. The application of the SLNB presumes a decrease in surgical and long-term morbidity, with an increase in the detection of lymphatic metastasis, mainly at the expense of detecting low tumour volume, selecting the group of patients that would benefit from a modification in adjuvant therapy. The SLNB can be established as an oncologically safe and effective method in the surgical staging of early-stage EC. Prospective studies are required to determine optimal behaviour and prognosis in the detection of low-volume metastases.

Keywords: endometrial cancer, lymphatic mapping, predictive value of tests, sentinel lymph node biopsy, ultrastaging

1. History and concept
The origins of lymphatic mapping date back more than 100 years, when Sappey in injected mercury into the skin of cadavers to delineate the skin's lymphatic pathways [1, 2]. Lymphoscintigraphy was described by Shearman and Ter-Pogossian in 1953, both of whom confirmed Sappey's hypothesis that lymphatic drainage occurs in an orderly and predictable manner [2].

The origin of lymphatic drainage of tumours and its implications for surgical staging are traced back to 1850 with the studies of Virchow and Haldsted on radical axillary lymphadenectomy for breast cancer.
Chapter 7

Role of Sentinel Node Biopsy in Endometrial Cancer

Begoña Díaz de la Noval

Abstract

Lymphadenectomy, for early stages of endometrial cancer (EC), provides a low detection rate of lymphatic metastasis, without having demonstrated a therapeutic effect; so that the collection and histological analysis of the sentinel lymph node (SLN) might be an alternative to lymphadenectomy. The contribution of SLN to surgical staging represents a change in the paradigm of lymphadenectomy in EC, being an intermediate approach between not assessing the condition of the lymph nodes and complete pelvic and paraaortic dissection. Accurate identification of the main uterine drainage pathway increases the likelihood of detecting metastases during lymphatic mapping. In addition, pathological assessment by the ultrastaging of the SLN is the most important advance in the SLN biopsy (SLNB) technique. The application of the SLNB presumes a decrease in surgical and long-term morbidity, with an increase in the detection of lymphatic metastasis, mainly at the expense of detecting low tumour volume, selecting the group of patients that would benefit from a modification in adjuvant therapy. The SLNB can be established as an oncologically safe and effective method in the surgical staging of early-stage EC. Prospective studies are required to determine optimal behaviour and prognosis in the detection of low-volume metastases.

Keywords: endometrial cancer, lymphatic mapping, predictive value of tests, sentinel lymph node biopsy, ultrastaging

1. History and concept

The origins of lymphatic mapping date back more than 100 years, when Sappey injected mercury into the skin of cadavers to delineate the skin’s lymphatic pathways [1, 2]. Lymphoscintigraphy was described by Shearman and Ter-Pogossian in 1953, both of whom confirmed Sappey’s hypothesis that lymphatic drainage occurs in an orderly and predictable manner [2].

The origin of lymphatic drainage of tumours and its implications for surgical staging are traced back to 1850 with the studies of Virchow and Haldsted on radical axillary lymphadenectomy for breast cancer.

The contribution of SLN to surgical staging represents a change in the paradigm of lymphadenectomy in EC. SLN represented an intermediate approach between not assessing the condition of the lymph nodes and complete pelvic and paraaortic dissection [3, 4]. The accurate identification of the main uterine drainage pathway increases the likelihood of detecting metastases during lymphatic mapping [5].
This information, provided by SLN, will change the therapeutic approach, with a potential benefit in the prognosis, both in survival and quality of life [6].

2. Detection method

Theoretically, the ideal method for studying SLN in EC should meet the following requirements:

1. Cause the least amount of patient discomfort possible, be easy to perform and be reproducible.

2. Be a preoperative procedure that enables planning of the surgical approach according to the anatomical location of the SLN.

3. Enable a laparoscopic approach according to the concept of minimally invasive surgery.

4. Enable the detection of SLN without complete dissection of the retroperitoneal space.

5. Obtain a lymphatic map representative of the tumour drainage or, at least, of the uterine body drainage [7].

2.1 Lymphatic drainage of the uterus

Unlike superficial tumours, such as melanoma, the physiology of lymphatic drainage in deeper/visceral tumours is not well established [8]. Uterine drainage, as well as being bilateral, is therefore complex [9]. Anatomically, three segments of uterine lymphatic drainage have been established:

1. The lower uterine segment drains from the paracervix to the parametrium and to the broad ligament, passing by the obturator, internal iliac and interiliac lymph node chains.

2. The middle third of the uterus drains the round ligament and the external iliac lymph node chain.

3. The upper uterine segment drains through the infundibular pelvic ligament, uterine-ovarian plexus and gonadal vessels towards the common iliac lymph node chain, presacral lymph nodes and paraaortic lymph nodes [10].

Physiologically, there are two main lymphatic pathways and a third accessory for uterine drainage [5]:

1. The main pathway or upper paracervical, located in the lymph trunks of the parametrium. The lymphatic vessels of the uterine body often cross the obliterated umbilical artery, which is the most common location of the pelvic SLN, rising over the upper part of the obturator region, medial to the external iliac vessels and ventral to the hypogastric vessels [5].

2. A less common pathway, the lower paracervical, is generally observed when the lymphatic vessels do not cross the obliterated umbilical artery and move
cranially over the course of the mesoureter. In these cases, SLN is usually observed in the internal iliac, common iliac or presacral region.

3. A third pathway has been described, the *infundibular pelvic*, but it is very rare except with fundal injections. This pathway has mainly fundal drainage towards the broad ligament and paraaortic chain [11].

### 2.2 Injection techniques

Three main areas of injection on the uterus have been described: (1) corporal, (2) endometrial and (3) cervical. Each area has been assessed with various approaches: hysteroscopic, laparoscopic and ultrasound-guided transvaginal and even with combined techniques.

1. **Corporal**: The injection can be subserosal or transmyometrial, in the anterior wall, posterior wall or uterine fundus. Corporal injection by laparotomy, using blue dye, was the first technique described. Subserosal injections have the drawback of multiple injections [12] and anatomical distortion when dealing with fibroids [13]. These injections might not be representative of the lesion if the tumour does not infiltrate the uterine fundus. Due to the lack of parametrial drainage, subserosal injections have a detection rate of 75–91% and bilaterality of 80%, which is lower than that of cervical injections (p = 0.005) [11], although the former has superior paraaortic drainage (31–40%) [14].

2. **Endometrial**: Intratumoural and peritumoural infiltration have superior validity due to the proximity to the tumour lesion [10, 15]. The disadvantages of this injection pathway are lower rates of bilaterality and paraaortic drainage, which are determined by the location and size of the lesion [16]. Hysteroscopic injections achieve detection rates of 69–80% [17, 18], with greater paraaortic drainage (up to 60%) [15], without having shown superiority against other injection pathways [19]. The hysteroscopic injection procedure is a more complex and uncomfortable technique for the patient. Recent studies have concluded that hysteroscopic injections do not have a correlation between the location of the SLN and the location of the tumour in the uterine cavity [20]. The risk of tumour dissemination to the abdominal cavity has been shown to be irrelevant [21]. Clamping the tubes before or after the injection of the dye interferes with the detection rate by decreasing it [22].

In 2013, the group from the Hospital Clinic of Barcelona published their results with the transvaginal ultrasound-guided myometrial injection of radiotracer (TUMIR) technique, injecting 148 MBq of $^{99m}$Tc-albumin nanocolloid (in a volume of 8 mL) in the anterior and posterior peritumoural uterine wall, with migration of 90.5% and laparoscopic identification of 74.3%. The drainage was pelvic in 87.2%, pelvic and paraaortic in 45.4% and exclusively paraaortic in 12.8% of cases. Metastatic involvement of SLN in high-risk histology appeared in 24 patients, with paraaortic extension in 30% of cases. The authors concluded that the TUMIR technique is representative of tumour drainage and can be a promising detection method in high-risk histology, although further studies on the technique are needed [7]. The TUMIR technique has shown no differences compared with hysteroscopic injections (p = 0.2) [7].

3. **Cervical**: The cervical injection is the modality most often reported in studies [23]. The technique is reproducible, because the uterine cervix is accessible and
rarely distorted in patients with EC [24]. The meta-analyses by Kang et al. [25] and Bodurtha-Smith et al. [26] showed that hysteroscopic or subserosal injections were associated with lower performance (p < 0.05), while cervical administration was correlated with higher detection rates (92%; range, 62–100% [27]; p = 0.031) [4] and bilaterality (56 vs. 33%; p = 0.003) (bilaterality is defined as the detection of sentinel node on both sides of the pelvis). The disadvantage was lower detection of paraaortic drainage (95% CI 3.4–10.1%) compared with other techniques (7% cervical vs. 27% corporal; p = 0.001) [28–31].

In terms of the number of injections, there have been no differences between the injection in two or four quadrants (with detection rates of 92 vs. 88%; p = 0.38), but there is less dye dissemination if the injection is limited to two quadrants [31]. Geppert et al. [11] performed pericervical injections at 2, 4, 8 and 10 o’clock thereby obtaining 5% paraaortic drainage. The MSKCC group recommended that cervical injections in EC be bilateral (at 3 and 9 o’clock), both superficial (in the submucosa) to 1–3 mm and deep (in the stroma) to 1–2 cm. In this way, the deep injection would therefore arrive at the isthmus, ensuring parametrial drainage. Applying this technique, a threefold greater detection of lymphatic metastases is achieved (p = 0.045), without assuming an increase in the overall detection rates (86%) [32]. The systematic review by Cormier et al. [27] determined that paraaortic detection has been significantly greater with deep cervical infiltration (17 vs. 2%).

Taking into account the critical review of Frumovitz and Levenback [33] and knowing the uterine drainage pathways, the location of the tumour will determine the dissemination of the disease, and the injection technique might reflect the pattern of lymphatic mapping. However, the study by Geppert et al. [11] concluded that the cervical pathway (with submucosal and stromal injection) should be considered the standard pathway, not only due to being a safer injection technique but also because the two main pathways of lymphatic drainage of the uterus were identified regardless of the injection technique employed.

In terms of the lower cervical paraaortic drainage, numerous studies have verified that the incidence rate of paraaortic metastases isolated for EC in initial stages is 5%, with approximately 50% of metastatic pelvic and paraaortic lymph nodes [34]. Ninety percent of detected SLNs are located in the pelvic area; the rest are presacral or paraaortic. The other techniques likely obtain greater paraaortic drainage, at the expense of underestimating the main pathway of pelvic drainage [29, 30].

There is no known technique that detects with absolute bilaterality, and we still do not know why a central organ, such as the uterus, has cases in which bilateral drainage is not observed [20]. Ideally, the technique is considered valid if at least one SLN is identified in each hemipelvis [11].

There is no one ideal or superior technique; all have shown good results, with advantages and disadvantages [25]. Cervical injection is effective and reproduces pelvic drainage. Corporal injection better reproduces paraaortic drainage and the hysteroscopic pathway is representative of tumour drainage, although both are less reproducible than the cervical pathway [4]. A number of authors have advocated combined methods that provide better results. Studies such as the one by Holub et al. [35] have combined cervical and subserosal injections, achieving detection rates of 80%, without observing superiority over the two methods applied individually. In other studies with cervical and fundal injection, detection rates of 72.5% were achieved, comparable results without superior paraaortic drainage (4.9 vs. 9.8%; p = 0.18) [6].

Table 1 shows a comparison of the main characteristics of the abovementioned injection techniques.
2.3 Sentinel node identification

Various tracers have been shown to be useful. The most commonly used tracers in the lymphatic mapping of EC include $^{99m}$Tc-nanocolloid, blue dyes and indocyanine green (ICG), alone or in combination [36].

One inherent and necessary advantage of tracers is their high capacity for penetration and fixation in lymphatic tissues [30]. The objective of lymphatic mapping and preoperative marking with tracer is the ability to analyse at least one lymph node per lymph node chain, two in the case of bilaterality [37].

SLNB was initially performed by the colorimetric method with methylene blue (MB) or synthetic variants of blue dye. SLNB was later combined with the isotopic detection of radiocolloids, thanks to the development of endoscopic gamma-ray detection probes, becoming the standard for use. In recent years, the application of lymphatic mapping by fluorescence in the near-infrared (NIR) electromagnetic spectrum with ICG obviated the need for a nuclear medicine unit and avoiding the adverse effects of blue dye, providing excellent results.

2.3.1 Preoperative marking: radiocolloid

The approach to studying the lymphatic pathways using nuclear medicine techniques has gained considerable momentum in recent years with the development of SLNB.

A radiopharmaceutical is a radioactive compound used for the diagnosis and treatment of diseases. Radiopharmaceuticals’s property of transmitting radioisotopes for remote detection is employed to diagnostic purposes [38].

Radiopharmaceuticals can be classified, according to their chemical structure, into primary radionuclides and labelled compounds, the latter of which are essentially a combination of two components: a radionuclide and a particle. The particles are small molecules, colloids, proteins and cells; the most widely used are colloidal sulphur (USA) and albumin (Europe). The particle serves as a vehicle that selectively directs the radiopharmaceutical to a specific tissue in response to physiological conditions or specific patterns of gene expression [38]. The size of the particles...
is important (range, 2–1500 nm) because it affects the drainage speed and retention of particles in the lymph node [34].

The most widely used diagnostic radiopharmaceutical in nuclear medicine is isomerised metastable 99m\(^{\text{m}}\)Tc [38], which is nontoxic and has almost ideal physical properties: a physical half-life to 99Tc (transition metal) of 6 h, a detectable emission and monochromatic gamma ray of 140 keV, complete disintegration within 24 h and low ionising radiation with negligible exposure [36, 39]. The greatest contribution of radiopharmaceuticals is the ability to use it as a marker of distinct pharmaceutical preparations, known as cold kits. The most used cold kit is the Nanocoll® 500 \(\mu\)g/vial (GE Healthcare Bio-Sciences, S.A.U., Madrid), a compound of colloidal particles of human serum albumin measuring \(\leq 80\) nm in diameter. The compound therefore has avidity for absorption through the lymphatic capillaries, and the size of its particles does not permit displacement of the lymph node.

To perform the SLNB, low doses of radioactivity are employed (40–185 MBq/0.2–4 mCi) because the distribution space is highly reduced. Only the drainage to the first or second lymph nodes needs to be assessed [38]. Furthermore, the injected dose of radiocolloid is calculated based on the estimated time to surgery; the longer the interval, the larger the dose to ensure an adequate signal. The 99m\(^{\text{m}}\)Tc-albumin nanocolloid is injected the day of the surgery (the radiocolloid injection is performed 6 h before the operation with preoperative imaging 30 min after the injection; the dose should be 0.2–1.0 mCi), a method known as the short protocol. If the nanocolloid is injected the day before the surgery (at a dose of 2.0–4.0 mCi), the method is known as the long protocol [40]. Therefore, the radioisotope compound deposited in the interstitial space near the tumour will migrate to the lymphatic capillaries until it reaches the first lymph node encountered by the capillaries. Due to the size of the compound, the capillaries will be trapped, indicating the first sentinel node into which the administered site drains. Moreover, both the short half-life and the low injected dose leave relatively little space for flexibility in surgical scheduling, given that hours-long delays and postponing the operation to the following day due to logistics will compromise the efficacy of the lymphatic mapping [36].

The compound is contraindicated when faced with hypersensitivity to the active ingredient or any of the excipients and during pregnancy. As the radiocolloid is primarily cleared by the kidneys but also by the hepatobiliary system, dose adjustment is required for patients with renal and/or hepatic failure [39]. There have been no reported adverse effects related to the radiopharmaceutical 99m\(^{\text{m}}\)Tc-nanocolloid, except the standard risks of the technical procedure: bleeding, vasovagal syncope and local infection [6].

### 2.3.1.1 Lymphoscintigraphy and single-photon emission computed tomography

The disadvantages of radiocolloid are the lack of visual assessment and the need for nuclear medicine procedures [30]. Lymphoscintigraphy and single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) can obtain preoperative images of the lymphatic drainage [38].

Lymphoscintigraphy obtains a flat static image with morphological information of the lymphatic drainage of the injected radiocolloid [8, 41]. Lymphoscintigraphy in EC offers varying results, depending on the injection method, with poorer detection rates than the overall rates and poor correlation between the preoperative findings and intraoperative detection [42, 43]. In the meta-analysis by Bodurtha-Smith and Tanner [26] of 55 articles and 4915 included patients, preoperative lymphoscintigraphy and the combined use of radiotracer with dye improved the overall SLN detection rates (86 vs. 76%; \(p = 0.016\) and 87 vs. 78%; \(p = 0.008\),

DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.89949
respectively); however, preoperative lymphoscintigraphy showed no benefit. An explanation for the low resolution and correlation could be the proximity of the injection site to the drainage, which can mask the SLN in flat images, and the anatomical complexity of the pelvic area, which can cause confusion in the correct anatomical description.

SPECT obtained a three-dimensional image with the fusion of the scintigraphic image with that of the traditional scanner. SPECT provides image information on the intensity of the scintigraphy and the precise anatomical location of the SLN(s) by scanner [44]. In the study by Naaman et al. [45], SPECT achieved a topographical accuracy of 91%, detecting a higher number of SLNs (1.4 vs. 2.13 SLNs/patient). Buda et al. achieved a detection rate of 50% and bilaterality of 39% for lymphoscintigraphy. For SPECT, the authors achieved a detection rate of 91%, bilaterality of 53% and sensitivity and a negative predictive value of 100% [46]. Compared with lymphoscintigraphy, the high sensitivity of SPECT seems to offer significant improvement in detecting SLNs and in the anatomical location [47, 48].

2.4 Surgical detection

The surgical SLN detection techniques can be applied to open surgery, laparoscopy and robot-assisted surgery [30], with overall detection rates of 60–100% [27]. Regarding the possibility of laparotomic detection, Mais et al. [49] used methylene blue (MB) as tracer and observed a significant difference between the laparoscopic pathway and laparotomy, with detection rates of 82 and 41%, respectively, although with the same false negative rate (FNR).

The mean number of SLNs detected per patient is 2.9 (95% CI 2.5–3.3; range 1–8) [26]. In terms of location, Abu-Rustum et al. [50] reported 89% of SLNs in the territory between the external iliac, obturator and internal iliac areas, with 4% of SLNs in the paraaortic area and 6% in the common iliac areas.

2.4.1 Radiocolloid

The gamma emissions of the radiocolloid can be tracked intraoperatively by a portable gamma probe adapted to open surgery or laparoscopy [42]. The use of laparoscopic gamma probe increases SLN identification guided anatomically by the previous images of SPECT and lymphoscintigraphy [51]. The gamma probe emits a signal proportional to the radioactivity uptake (analogue [counts per second] and auditory), enabling the accurate localisation of the radiocolloid in the lymph node station [38]. The activity will mark this lymph node regardless of whether it is normal or pathological [38].

The radiocolloid is often used along with dye to optimise the detection rate and visual assessment [30]. Studies with only radiotracer are therefore few, with a detection rate in the range of 70–96% [6]. In the Detection Rate and Diagnostic Accuracy of Sentinel-node Biopsy in Early Stage Endometrial Cancer (SENTI-ENDO) multicentre study, the long protocol with an injection of radiocolloid increased the detection rate of lymphoscintigraphy versus the short protocol (80.3 vs. 68.2%; p = 0.02). The paraaortic detection was more frequent in the long protocol, with no intraoperative differences [40]. There was a weak correlation between preoperative and intraoperative detection (k = 0.3) [40]. Other published data indicate good detection rates of 82% [6] and bilaterality with both protocols. While some authors use to perform another lymphoscintigraphy on the morning of the surgery [43, 52], with similarly poor improvement and weak correlation [22]. Other authors have proposed injecting the radiocolloid intraoperatively after the
induction of anaesthesia, omitting the preoperative imaging and identifying the SLN directly with the gamma probe 30 min after the injection [36].

The disadvantages of this procedure include the high financial and staff costs, the risk of radioactive exposure and patient discomfort during the preoperative preparation. The advantages include the longer duration of the marking and fixation in the lymph node [15]. The technical limitations are related to the massive and diffuse uptake by the tissue, the interference caused in the gamma probe (which hinders the proper differentiation of the lymphatic tissue, especially in the parametrium and obturator area) and the uptake by the reticuloendothelial system (liver, spleen and bone marrow) [6, 27].

2.5 Dyes

2.5.1 Blue dye

The dye enables the visual identification of the SLN marked or not with the radioisotope. Several dyes have been used: 1% isosulfan blue, 1% MB and 2.5% patent blue. Isosulfan blue is a blue-green hygroscopic powder that is prepared by diluting it in sterile water. MB was created in 1876 and is the first fully synthetic drug used in medicine. Patent blue is a dark blue synthetic dye used as food colouring, and its intensity fades quickly when exposed to sunlight [36].

The detection rates with only blue dye are lower (57–62%), with a bilaterality of 56.1% (50–60%) [17, 53]. MB has lower diffusion but acceptable detection rates (57.5%, range 45–92%) and bilaterality (42.4%, range 50–60%) [54]. Nevertheless, when SLNB is applied to other cancers, such as breast cancer, the various dyes have shown accuracy and equivalence in SLN marking [36]. MB is preferred due to the extensive experience with this dye and its better toxicity profile. Due to the lower detection and given that the combination with 99mTc or ICG results in higher detection rates, MB is not recommended for use in isolation [21, 27].

After the blue dye is injected interstitially, it binds to the serum proteins and is filtered to the lymphatic vessels passing to the SLN, which will be stained in blue in approximately 5–10 min. This simple method requires no specific logistics, but the SLN must be identified at the start of the procedure before the dye vanishes or is displaced further along the lymphatic system and identifies a second nonsentinel step [36].

MB is more economical and safer than isosulfan blue. The half-life is 5–6 h, with mainly urinary and, to a lesser extent, biliary excretion. The recommendation is to use 2–4 ml of a 1% solution and to not take more than 10–20 min detecting the SLN due to the diffusion of the dye through the lymphatic tissue. A number of authors have estimated the mean procedure time, with an interval of 13.4 ± 6.2 min between the injection and visualisation and a SLN excision time of 17.4 ± 11.2 min [31].

Adverse effects related to the blue dye occur in 2% of cases [36]. The following effects have been reported: severe allergic reactions and anaphylactic crises (0.7–1.9%), thrombophlebitis at the injection site, tissue necrosis, haemolysis or paradoxical methemoglobinemia and serotonin syndrome in patients undergoing treatment with serotonin reuptake inhibitors [30, 55]. Patients and health professionals should be advised of transient colouring of the urine and the possibility of interference with pulse oximetry readings [36]. The use of the dye is contraindicated in cases of hypersensitivity (MD induced allergic reaction and methemoglobinemia), severe renal failure (dosage adjustments may be necessary as serum concentrations are increased in patients with impaired renal function) and glucose-6-phosphate-dehydrogenase deficiency (due to haemolytic anaemia when red blood cells are
exposed to the chemical). The dye is not recommended for use during pregnancy or breastfeeding because the dye's safety has not been established.

2.5.2 Indocyanine green

Since the inclusion of fluorescence, the authors such as Holloway et al. [31] have replaced the radiocolloid and achieved equally good results. ICG is a tricarbocyanine dye with a short half-life of 3–4 min and hepatic excretion. ICG was developed by Kodak in the 1950s for use in photography and was approved by the US Food and Drug Administration in 1956 for IV administration [36]. The dye emits an intense blue colour detectable in real time when excited by laser in the near-infrared wavelength (range 750–900 nm, with an absorption peak at 800 nm) [6]. The high avidity by lymphatic tissue enables a high detection rate and accuracy compared with common tracers [4, 56, 57].

ICG has been used for years in laparoscopic and open surgery and in numerous other specialties (cardiology, general surgery, ophthalmology, vascular surgery, urology, etc.). The dye has recently been included in gynaecology. Lymph node mapping by fluorescence with ICG was first described by Furukawa et al. in 2010 in patients with cervical cancer. In 2012, Rossi et al. [58] applied ICG to 20 patients with cervical cancer or EC who underwent robot-assisted laparoscopic detection, achieving a detection rate of 85% and bilaterality of 60%.

The supposed benefits of this technology include high tissue penetration with low autofluorescence [59]. ICG has been shown to be superior to blue dyes, particularly in patients with obesity [30]. Following an interstitial injection, ICG is absorbed to the lymphatic system and travels quickly to the lymph nodes. ICG binds to plasma proteins and is excreted by the liver [36]. The dye lacks significant adverse effects. A single case of a severe allergic reaction after IV injection has been reported (incidence rate of 0.05%) [60]. However, the dye is contraindicated for use in patients with allergies to iodine [23, 56]. Nevertheless, given that iodine is a chemical element and an essential component of the human body, a number of authors have suggested the safety of using ICG in patients with iodine allergies, given that a type I allergic reaction (antibody-mediated and responsible for anaphylactic shock) will not occur [36]. The use of ICG in pregnant patients has been reported as safe [61].

To date, there has been no standard in the concentration and volume to be injected. Rossi et al. [58], Jewell et al. [62] and Holloway et al. [63] established the optimal ICG dose for detecting SLN at 1, 1.25 or 2.5 mg/mL in 4 mL [23]. Unlike 99mTc, ICG does not remain confined to a lymph node but rather diffuses rapidly through the lymphatic tissue towards the second step lymph nodes without losing intensity. It is therefore crucial to quickly start the search for the SLNs after the administration of ICG, without delaying the start of detection by more than 10 min [23], thereby reducing the risk of sampling too many lymph nodes [36], which limits the technique beyond 25–30 min of the injection [64].

Erikson et al. [65] compared the isolated use of ICG and MB in 472 patients, obtaining a higher detection rate (95 vs. 81%; \(p < 0.001\)) and bilaterality (85 vs. 54%; \(p < 0.001\)) with ICG. In 2015, How et al. [66] compared ICG, MB and 99mTc-nanocolloid, obtaining a higher detection rate (86 vs. 71%; \(p = 0.005\)) and bilaterality (65 vs. 43%; \(p = 0.002\)) with ICG than with MB and a similar rate (87 vs. 88%; \(p = 0.83\)) and bilaterality (65 vs. 71%; \(p = 0.36\)) to 99mTc. In 2016, Papadia et al. [67] published the results of a retrospective, multicentre comparative study between detection with the combined technique using radiocolloid and blue dye versus radiocolloid and ICG. The overall detection rate was 97.3% for 99mTc-blue and 96.9% for ICG (\(p = 0.547\)). The bilaterality was 84.1% with ICG and 73.5% with
the blue dye; ICG was significantly superior (p = 0.007). In a series by Martinelli et al. [19] of 202 cases using ICG plus 99mTc as tracer, there were no differences in the detection rate (93.2%), and the bilateral detection was superior with ICG (72.8 vs. 53.3%; p = 0.0012). All of the authors (and many not mentioned here) agree that ICG offers the highest detection rates comparable to those of the standard 99mTc-blue technique but with superior bilaterality [11, 26].

ICG achieves greater diffusion; better visualisation; greater bilateral detection, which translates into a lower risk of lymphadenectomy (61% with MB vs. 39% with ICG; p < 0.001 [63]); a shorter surgical time and long-term financial savings and can obviate the need for an injection of radiotracer [68]. It was initially stated that ICG represented an increase in the number of resected SLNs, a finding that became standard with experience in the technique [69]. Therefore, considering its good toxicity profile, its ease of use and high effectiveness, ICG is the current tracer of choice [70]. The main disadvantage of ICG is that the NIR detection equipment is expensive, because it requires specific optical systems [71].

Advances in the fluorescence technique are ongoing. New NIR detection systems, such as the PINPOINT® Endoscopic Fluorescence Imaging System, specifically identify the uptake intensity with colour codes, such that the primary lymph node is differentiated from the secondary nodes, preventing the excision of nonlymphatic or canalicular tissue [72].

2.6 Combined method

The objective of the double injection method is to optimise the detection rate and bilaterality, given that single dyes (mainly blue dyes) have lower detection rates and bilaterality [27]. The recent systematic review by Cormier et al. [27] achieved superior results with a combination of two tracers. Various combinations have been applied.

2.6.1 Radiocolloid and blue dye

Results vary significantly; however, the conclusion is that a better detection rate (81 vs. 57%; p = 0.01) and bilaterality (54 vs. 28%; p = 0.009) are achieved with the combination than with the isolated application of each tracer [45]. The multicentre prospective study by the AGO group with 590 patients obtained a better detection rate applying the combined method of radiocolloid and patent blue dye (88.6 vs. 93.5%; p < 0.001). Other authors have achieved similarly improved surgical detection results by applying this double method, which has become established as the most appropriate combination of tracers. The review by Ruscito et al. [70] compared the detection by the combined technique (of 99mTc and MB) with ICG and achieved superior bilaterality with ICG and a tendency to a higher overall detection rate, without differences compared with the combined method.

2.6.2 Radiocolloid and ICG

How et al. [66] compared ICG and isosulfan blue with radiocolloid in a cervical injection in 100 patients with EC. The detection rate (87 vs. 88%; p = 0.83) and bilaterality (71 vs. 65%; p = 0.36) achieved with ICG and the radiocolloid were comparable to the data obtained with only an injection of ICG. In the meta-analysis by Lin et al. [73], the combined technique with 99mTc and ICG achieved a detection rate of 92% and bilaterality of 86%, results comparable to those using only ICG (91% and 78%, respectively).
2.6.3 Blue dye and ICG

The prospective cohort study by Holloway et al. [31] combining blue dye with ICG achieved a significant increase in the detection rate (87.8% with blue-ICG vs. 76% for blue alone), bilaterality (83.9% with blue-ICG vs. 40% for blue alone; \( p < 0.001 \)) and detection of lymphatic metastases (21.1% with blue-ICG vs. 13.5% for blue alone; \( p = 0.056 \)) versus the isolated injection of blue dye. In the study by Jewell et al. [62], lymphatic mapping with ICG detected the SLN in 95% of cases, with bilaterality of 79% and no statistically significant differences versus the combined use with isosulfan blue (detection rate of 93%, \( p = 0.64 \); bilaterality of 77%, \( p = 0.8 \)). Other authors have reached the same conclusion as Jewell: the high effectiveness in the identification with fluorescence is not increased by blue dye. The combination therefore appears unnecessary, which would avoid an increased risk of adverse effects [54].

2.7 Triple tracer

There are few published studies on this subject. How et al. [66] concluded that the triple injection (blue dye, \(^{99m}\)Tc and ICG) in the cervix (submucosa and stroma) provided a detailed mapping of the lymphatic canals, from the parametrium and presacral areas to the hypogastric vessels.

2.8 Paramagnetic tracer

New tracers are being applied. Recently, the Central-European SentiMAG multicentre clinical trial compared the use of the standard tracer (\(^{99m}\)Tc-nanocolloid and MB) with superparamagnetic iron oxide (SPIO) labelled nanoparticles, marketed under the name Sienna®. The preliminary results indicated comparable detection rates of 97.3 versus 98% with the same number of SLNs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>(^{99m})Tc</th>
<th>Blue</th>
<th>ICG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Economic cost</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical complexity</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detection rate/ bilaterality</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comfort for the patient</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Need for specific equipment</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Radiopharmaceutical/ lymphogammagraphy/SPECT–CT)</td>
<td>(NIR detection hardware)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverse Reactions</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1–6/100.000)</td>
<td>(2%)</td>
<td>(&lt; 0.05%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphotropism</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration marking</td>
<td>24 h/+++</td>
<td>10–20 min/+</td>
<td>20–30 min/++</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The score was assigned according to the following gradation: (−) = absence of the characteristic or negative evaluation, (+) = meets the characteristic or positive evaluation, (++) = complies being better; (+++) = it fulfils being superior. \(^{99m}\)Tc = \(^{99m}\)Tc-nanocolloid albumin; ICG = indocyanine green; NIR = near-infrared electromagnetic spectrum. Reference source: Papadia et al. [36].

Table 2. Characteristics of tracers.
per patient and a tendency for the SPIO tracer to identify more metastatic SLNs, although further research is needed [34].

Table 2 shows a comparison of the main characteristics of the most widely used tracers.

### 3. Histological analysis

One of the main advantages that the SLN technique offers pathologists is the ability to select and minimise the number of lymph nodes to study, which enables a more exhaustive analysis and search for microscopic metastatic involvement.

#### 3.1 Intraoperative value

Classically, the most widely used method for analysing SLNs has been the intraoperative assessment with haematoxylin-eosin (H&E) of imprint cytology performed in fresh samples and in frozen sections with rapid Diff-Quik staining. Intraoperative examination is questionable due to its limitations, both in the processing and in the results. Its success depends greatly on the collaboration between the surgeon and pathologist [74]. An intraoperative assessment can only examine a small portion of the SLN, has low sensitivity (56–67%) for the intraoperative detection of metastases and has an FNR of 20–30%, which makes the procedure inadequate and unsafe for the patient [75]. The results of Kim et al. [76] indicate an intraoperative understaging of 24%. For Ballester et al. [77], the rate was 43.7%, with little assessment of low-volume metastases. Additionally, the frozen sections distort the lymph node tissue, thereby precluding lymph node ultrastaging [30] and precluding the detection of micrometastatic involvement in the case of initially negative lymph nodes [75]. Currently, the guidelines of the National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) do not recommend the routine intraoperative assessment of SLNs, except when there is high suspicion and a nonsentinel lymph node [5]. However, other authors have emphasised the importance of intraoperative study to avoid reoperations, especially in high-risk tumours [78].

#### 3.2 Ultrastaging

Conventional histological examination of a nonsentinel lymph node involves a single section along the lymph node’s major longitudinal axis and H&E staining, with deeper levels or application of immunohistochemistry (IHC) at the pathologist’s discretion [30].

Occasionally, the only evidence of extrauterine disease is the presence of metastases in the SLN. Considering the poorer prognosis associated with the detection of lymphatic metastases, a much more exhaustive analysis is justified [74, 79]. Therefore, pathological assessment by the ultrastaging of the SLN is the most important advance in the SLNB technique [80].

##### 3.2.1 Histological ultrastaging and immunohistochemistry

The histological ultrastaging procedure includes a protocol for the series of microscopic examinations of the SLN block fixed and imbedded in paraffin, with the addition of the immunohistochemical analysis with cytokeratin measurement (pan-cytokeratin kits AE1/AE2 or anti-CK19), thereby increasing the sensitivity [80]. There are no formal evidence-based regimens for the pathology assessment of SLNs in EC, which entails considerable variability among institutions and,
therefore, debatable results [30]. The study by Euscher et al. [81] compared two methods of ultrastaging by histological microsection, achieving increased detection of metastatic SLN in 32% of patients, with a mean metastasis size of 0.24–0.38 mm, with no differences in the detection rate by ultrastaging method. The algorithm proposed by the MSKCC consists of an initial assessment by H&E and, if negative, performing two adjacent 5-μm slices at two levels separated by 50 μm in the paraffin block, applying H&E staining and pan-cytokeratins AE1/AE3 in each slice [82]. Holloway et al. [48] performed three slices per level, two of which were then stained with H&E and one with AE1/AE3. Other authors have performed four levels with six slices at 40 μm intervals (levels 1 and 2 with H&E and levels 3 and 4 with AE1/AE3) or five levels (levels 1, 3 and 5 with H&E and 2 and 4 with AE1/AE3) [30] (Figure 1).

Cytokeratin-19 (CK-19) is a protein of the intermediate filament responsible for the structural integrity of epidermal epithelial cells, which in normal conditions is not expressed in the lymphatic tissue and is expressed abnormally in more than 90% of cells by EC [83, 84]. CK-19 is a biomarker directly related to the capacity for tumour dissemination in EC, with high sensitivity and a capacity for discriminating between metastatic and nonmetastatic lymph nodes or areas of lymphovascular invasion [84, 85].

Ultrastaging is a more complex procedure, requiring significant dedication, and has the added risk of high intraobserver and interobserver variability. The diagnostic categories of the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) are applied for breast cancer, with the following classifications for SLN: negative (<200 individual tumour cells or tumour cell aggregates <0.2 mm in size, including the presence of isolated cytokeratin-positive tumour cells [ITC]), micrometastatic (size ≥0.2 and <2 mm) (μM) or macrometastatic (>2 mm) (MM) [86]. The term low tumour volume includes the ITC and μM categories.

The ultrastaging of SLN has improved the validity of the technique and detects an additional 5–15%, with a high rate of low-volume lymph node disease (approximately 50% of patients with metastatic SLN), which would not be identified with the conventional technique. Ultrastaging represents an overall mean increase of 25% (range, 10–60%) in detecting metastatic lymph nodes [80, 84].

Figure 1. The SLN algorithm for surgical staging of endometrial cancer. Obtained from NCCN Guideline in Endometrial Carcinoma, Version 4.2019: ‘Principles of evaluation and surgical staging when SLN mapping is used, Figure 4: The SLN algorithm for surgical staging of endometrial cancer’. SLN = sentinel lymph node; LND = lymph node dissection.
Analysis by histological microsection and H&E detects 6.9% more patients with metastatic SLN, while the inclusion of IHC provides an additional 4.5% (82.6% with low tumour volume), which represents 12.6% of patients with metastatic SLN [82]. In the multicentre retrospective study by Raimond et al. [87] with 136 low-intermediate risk cases, the detection of SLN and the ultrastaging analysis increased the detection of metastatic lymph nodes threefold over lymphadenectomy (16.2 vs. 5.1%; p = 0.03); 11% of the cases were μM and 5.1% were MM, with an FNR of 0 (95% CI 0–1.6%). In the study, 6.1% of the metastatic SLN were detected by histological microsection, and 10.1% were detected by IHC. All MM cases were diagnosed by histological microsection, and 73.3% of the μM cases were diagnosed by IHC readings. Thus, by applying ultrastaging, the SLNB restaged 50% of the patients included in the study to an European Society of Medical Oncology (ESMO) high risk (14.7% of the sample), thereby changing the adjuvant therapy compared with women with negative or unassessed lymph nodes (p < 0.001). In the study by Hagen et al. [88], 75% of patients with metastatic SLN were detected with histological microsection and an additional 25% with IHC. For Desai et al. [89], 50% of the metastatic SLNs were detected by IHC.

3.2.2 Molecular ultrastaging

The one-step nucleic acid amplification method (OSNA) is a validated technique for breast cancer and enables a quantitative, systematic, automated, nonobserver-dependent analysis for detecting lymph node metastases [74, 84]. The application of this method always requires prior confirmation of CK-19 expression in the tumour tissue [90, 91]. The application of radiocolloid or dye does not interfere with the process. The number of mRNA copies of CK-19 corresponds to the size of the metastatic foci present in the SLN [92], such that the results are visualised in four separate categories: negative (<10^2 copies of mRNA/μL), ITC (10^2 to <2.5 x 10^2 copies of mRNA/μL), μM (≥2.5 x 10^2 to <5 x 10^3 copies mRNA/μL) and MM (≥5 x 10^3 copies mRNA/μL) [93].

The results of the Breast Complete Lymphadenectomy OSNA Study for Enhanced Review-I (B-CLOSER-I) [94] indicate that histopathology (compared with molecular detection) significantly underestimates the rate of metastases of axillary lymph nodes. Preliminary results of its application in EC indicate superior diagnostic accuracy compared with conventional ultrastaging, although further research is needed. By applying the OSNA method, the study by Nagai et al. [84] achieved sensitivity of 93.3%, specificity of 99.5%, a negative predictive value (NPV) of 99.5% and a correlation of 99.1%. In the study by López-Ruiz et al. [85] of 34 patients with chronic diseases and 94 analysed SLNs, the OSNA method detected a larger portion of additional low tumour volume metastases, with diagnostic capacity (sensitivity of 100%, specificity of 87.5%, accuracy of 88.3% and an FNR of 2.8%).

4. Approach and prognosis for metastatic sentinel nodes

The increase in detection of lymphatic metastases resulting from the introduction of ultrastaging is mainly at the expense of the detection of low tumour volume. The NCCN guidelines [5] and the consensus of The Society of Gynecologic Oncology (SGO) [30] recommend the study of SLNs by ultrastaging, indicating that the significance of low-volume lymph node involvement is still uncertain and have not established an optimal treatment approach [56, 95, 96].
A number of authors have debated and hypothesised a different tumour biology and therefore a different behaviour between tumours with MM and μM. For other authors, μM metastases appear early and are reflections of isolated metastases in type 2 histology but would be metastases of late evolution in tumours with low oncologic aggressiveness [97]. It has also been suggested that μM metastases could represent an intermediate state between negative lymph nodes and positive lymph nodes for MM [98].

One of the aforementioned advantages of the SLNB technique in early stages is avoiding the implementation of lymphadenectomy [87]. However, the therapeutic benefit of completing the lymphadenectomy when faced with the finding of metastatic SLN with low tumour volume remains unknown, and its systematic implementation is not justified [83, 98, 99]. The FIRES trial performed postoperative radiological studies (with scanner or positron emission tomography-computed tomography [PET-CT]). When the findings showed voluminous residual metastases, the proposed treatment was surgical cytoreduction or a change in the adjuvant radiation therapy (RT) to include the paraaortic area [75].

In recent years, research has been conducted on the possible influence of adjuvant therapy and the prognosis for patients with low-volume lymphatic metastases [100]. There is still no evidence from prospective randomised studies on cases with detected low-volume metastatic tumours, resulting in heterogeneity among the published studies [57]. Moreover, it is important to determine the benefit provided to these patients by combining CT and/or adjuvant RT, considering the scarce survival benefit obtained. The study by Plante et al. [101] analysed the impact of adjuvant therapy on survival. Thirty-five percent of the patients with ITC in the SLN underwent CT and external beam RT, 32% only underwent external beam RT or vaginal brachytherapy and 32% underwent follow-up. The overall survival at 3 years in the group with ITC was 95.5%, with no differences compared with the patients without metastatic lymph nodes or with μM in the SLN (87.6 and 85.5%, respectively). However, the low tumour volume SLN was superior to the SLN with MM (58.5%; p < 0.001).

Significant differences have not been observed between the prognosis of patients with only SLN excision versus those with lymphadenectomy (disease-free survival [DFS] at 3 years of 94.9 vs. 96.8%; p = 0.35). However, it has been observed that the patient group with metastatic SLN increases the portion of adjuvant therapy received (27.1 vs. 10.8%; p < 0.001) [102]. In the retrospective series by Raimond et al. [87], neither the absence of metastases in SLN, the detection of metastatic SLN nor the presence of μM in the SLN represented an improvement in DFS ([hazard ratio (HR), 0.89; 95% CI 0.42–1.90; p = 0.77], [HR, 0.82; 95% CI 0.18–3.64; p = 0.8] and [HR, 0.46; 95% CI 0.03–7.42; p = 0.59], respectively). When comparing negative lymphadenectomy with the detection of lymphatic metastases, there were no differences in DFS (HR, 1.13; 95% CI 0.34–3.76; p = 0.84) or overall survival (HR, 1.29; 95% CI 0.30–5.59; p = 0.73).

Yabushita et al. [92] showed that the detection of μM and SLN was an independent factor for recurrence in early stages of EC. Kim et al. [76] measured a tendency to late distant metastasis when the SLN was metastatic for μM. For Todo et al. [97], ITCs in the paraaortic area were not associated with a greater risk of nonlymphogenic or extrapelvic recurrence. For Kim et al. [76], these ITCs did not represent increased relapses. In the study by Erkanli et al. [103], DFS and overall survival were significantly lower in patients with μM (p < 0.05), while the presence of ITCs appeared to have no effect on survival. In another study by Todo et al. [104], the presence of low tumour volume was an independent factor for extrapelvic relapse (RR, 17.9), with 20% lower survival (overall survival of 71.4 vs. 91.9% and DFS of 55.6 vs. 84%; p = 0.074) and a tendency towards late relapse.
The results of 13 methodologically comparable studies are cited; studies include more than a hundred of cases, except for the one of Ehrisman et al. [107] because it is one of the recently published studies that includes patients with high-risk endometrial cancer. The studies include cases with all histological type and two papers only high-risk cases, the one mentioned by Ehrisman et al. [107] and Soliman et al. [108]. The average of the collected variables is estimated. Results of two meta-analyses, which have not been added in the estimation, are attached to the possibility that the previously mentioned studies were already included in their data. The word "Various" indicates that various injection methods or tracer combinations were collected. The blank box indicates that this information has not been mentioned in the article.

N = patients included; SLN = sentinel lymph node; DR = detection rate; BL = bilaterality; Se = sensibility; NPV = negative predictive value; FNR = false negative rate; FN = false negative; (+) = metastasis; w/o = with or without; (%) = proportion; Σ = summation; (μ/σ) = mean/standard deviation; 99mTc = 99mTc-nanocolloid albumin; MB = methylene blue; ICG = indocyanine green; PAO = paraaortic.

1 All three FNR cases had nonendometrioid histology, one with paraaortic positive drainage. There were no cases of isolated paraaortic drainage.
2 The data are reflected after application of the MSKCC proposed surgical algorithm. Without applying the algorithm: Se of 85.1%, VPN of 98.1% and FNR of 14.9%. One FNR case with isolated paraaortic metastasis.
3 The estimation of the FNR is performed from the total of negative lymphadenectomies; it does not include negative SLN and positive lymphadenectomy, in which case it would be a FNR of 9.1%.
4 The predictive capacity is estimated only based on cases with SLN detected bilaterally.
5 Null FNR with Se and NPV of 100% after the retrospective application of the MSKCC algorithm.
6 The FNR would be 4.3% after adjusting by MSKCC algorithm.
7 Surgical detection with dual technique: radiotracer and dye. ICG increases the overall detection rate to 93% and bilaterality of 78%. Cervical injection increases Se to 93% and detection rate to 86%.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors/trial</th>
<th>Journal, year</th>
<th>Injection</th>
<th>Tracer</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>SLN/case</th>
<th>DR</th>
<th>BL</th>
<th>Se</th>
<th>NPN</th>
<th>FNR</th>
<th>FN localization</th>
<th>DR PAO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ballester et al. (SENTIENDO) [105]</td>
<td>Lancet Oncol. 2011</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>99mTc + Blue</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>PAO</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khoury-Collado et al. [79]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2011</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>99mTc w/o Blue</td>
<td>266</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>93</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How et al. [106]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2012</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>99mTc + Blue</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>PAO</td>
<td>16.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raimond et al. [87]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2014</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>99mTc + Blue</td>
<td>304</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>87.2</td>
<td>65.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>0³</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Touhami et al. [78]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2015</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>99mTc + Blue</td>
<td>268</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>73.5</td>
<td>97.2</td>
<td>99.4</td>
<td>0.6⁴</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hagen et al. [88]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2016</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>ICG</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>78</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ehrisman et al. [107]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol Reports. 2016</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>ICG or MB</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>92.3</td>
<td>7.7⁵</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holloway et al. [48]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2016</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>ICG + blue</td>
<td>780</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>98.3</td>
<td>80.7</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rossi et al. (FIRES) [75]</td>
<td>Lancet Oncol. 2017</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>ICG</td>
<td>385</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>97.2</td>
<td>99.6</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plante et al. [101]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2017</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>99mTc + Blue or ICG</td>
<td>519</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>98.4</td>
<td>99.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soliman et al. [108]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2017</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>99mTc + Blue or Blue or ICG</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>98.6</td>
<td>5⁶</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Σ (μ ± σ)</td>
<td></td>
<td>3490</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>89 ± 5.5</td>
<td>67 ± 9.6</td>
<td>92 ± 7.6</td>
<td>97 ± 2.9</td>
<td>4.2 ± 4.5</td>
<td>6 ± 5.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodurtha-Smith et al. Meta-analysis [26]</td>
<td>Am. J Obstet &amp; Gynecol. 2016</td>
<td>Cervical or uterine corpus</td>
<td>Dye (MB or ICG) w/o 99mTc</td>
<td>4915</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>99.7</td>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The results of 13 methodologically comparable studies are cited; studies include more than a hundred of cases, except for the one of Ehrisman et al. [107] because it is one of the recently published studies that includes patients with high-risk endometrial cancer. The studies include cases with all histological type and two papers only high-risk cases, the one mentioned by Ehrisman et al. [107] and Soliman et al. [108]. The average of the collected variables is estimated. Results of two meta-analyses, which have not been added in the estimation, are attached to the possibility that the previously mentioned studies were already included in their data. The word “Various” indicates that various injection methods or tracer combinations were collected. The blank box indicates that this information has not been mentioned in the article.

N = patients included; SLN = sentinel lymph node; DR = detection rate; BL = bilaterality; Se = sensitivity; NPV = negative predictive value; FNR = false negative rate; FN = false negative; (+) = metastasis; w/o = with or without; (%) = proportion; Σ = summation; (μ ± σ) = mean ± standard deviation; 99mTc = 99mTc-nanocolloid albumin; MB = methylene blue; ICG = indocyanine green; PAO = paraaortic.

1 All three FNR cases had nonendometrioid histology, one with paraaortic positive drainage. There were no cases of isolated paraaortic drainage.

2 The data are reflected after application of the MSKCC proposed surgical algorithm. Without applying the algorithm: Se of 85.1%, VPN of 98.1% and FNR of 14.9%. One FNR case with isolated paraaortic metastasis.

3 The estimation of the FNR is performed from the total of negative lymphadenectomies; it does not include negative SLN and positive lymphadenectomy, in which case it would be a FNR of 9.1%.

4 The predictive capacity is estimated only based on cases with SLN detected bilaterally.

5 Null FNR with Se and NPV of 100% after the retrospective application of the MSKCC algorithm.

6 The FNR would be 4.3% after adjusting by MSKCC algorithm.

7 Surgical detection with dual technique: radiotracer and dye. ICG increases the overall detection rate to 93% and bilaterality of 78%. Cervical injection increases Se to 93% and detection rate to 86%.

Table 3.
Analysis of recent studies: Detection rate, predictive capacity, false negative rate and paraaortic drainage of the sentinel node.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors/trial</th>
<th>Journal year</th>
<th>Injection</th>
<th>Tracer</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>SLN+</th>
<th>Single SLN+</th>
<th>LTV</th>
<th>ITC</th>
<th>μM</th>
<th>MM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ballester et al. (SENTIENDO)</td>
<td>Lancet Oncol. 2011</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>$^{99m}$Tc + Blue</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khoury-Collado et al. [79]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2011</td>
<td>Cervical (7)</td>
<td>$^{99m}$Tc w/o Blue</td>
<td>266</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How et al. [106]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2012</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>$^{99m}$Tc + Blue</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raimond et al. [87]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2014</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>$^{99m}$Tc + Blue</td>
<td>304</td>
<td>16.2</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. Clair et al. [109]</td>
<td>Annals of Surg Oncol. 2015</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>ICG o Blue</td>
<td>844</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Touhami et al. [78]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2015</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>$^{99m}$Tc + Blue</td>
<td>268</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hagen et al. [88]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2016</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>ICG</td>
<td>108</td>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holloway et al. [48]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2016</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>ICG + Blue</td>
<td>780</td>
<td>15.8</td>
<td>51.4</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>10.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ehrisman et al. [107]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol Reports, 2016</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>ICG o MB</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rossi et al. (FIRES) [75]</td>
<td>The Lancet Oncol. 2017</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>ICG</td>
<td>385</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plante et al. [101]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2017</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>$^{99m}$Tc + Blue o ICG</td>
<td>519</td>
<td>16.4</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soliman et al. [108]</td>
<td>Gynecol Oncol. 2017</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>$^{99m}$Tc + Azul or Blue or ICG</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$\sum (\mu \pm \sigma)$</td>
<td>4334</td>
<td>14.7 ± 3.5</td>
<td>45.1 ± 5.8</td>
<td>7.3 ± 2.8</td>
<td>3.1 ± 1.8</td>
<td>5.2 ± 3.4</td>
<td>8.6 ± 2.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The results of 13 methodologically comparable studies are cited; studies include more than a hundred of cases, except for the one of Ehrisman et al. [107] because it is one of the recently published studies that includes patients with high-risk endometrial cancer. The studies include cases with all histological type and two papers only high-risk cases, the one mentioned by Ehrisman et al. [107] and Soliman et al. [108]. The average of the collected variables is estimated. The blank box indicates that this information has not been mentioned in the article. N = patients included; SLN = sentinel lymph node; DR = detection rate; (+) = metastasis; LTV = low tumour volume (includes ITC and μM); ITC = isolated tumour cells; μM = micrometastasis; MM = macrometastasis; w/o = with or without; (%) = proportion; $\sum$ = summation; ($\mu \pm \sigma$) = mean ± standard deviation; $^{99m}$Tc = $^{99m}$Tc-nanocolloid albumin; MB = methylene blue; ICG = indocyanine green.

Table 4. Analysis of recent studies; proportion of patients with metastatic sentinel node, proportion of single metastatic sentinel node and distribution by type of metastases detected.
(49 vs. 16.5 months; \( p = 0.066 \)) compared with the patient group without lymphatic metastasis. The conclusion of these studies is that the presence of μM can represent a prognostic biomarker in terms of survival, but whether the presence of ITCs should be used as such, regardless of other clinical-pathological risk factors, is still unknown [30] (Tables 3 and 4).

5. Recommendations for the clinical application of selective sentinel node biopsy

The published results of SLNB in EC have shown good diagnostic performance. SNLB is a promising and safe technique from the oncological point of view [10]. Given the mixed results, which have failed to show a therapeutic benefit [9], and the lack of long-term results [5], an appropriate interpretation is recommended [4, 29], considering SNLB a technique under study [79].

As with lymphadenectomy and adjuvant therapy, SNLB can be safely omitted for low-risk patients (endometrioid histology: IA G1, IA G2) [9, 56]. For intermediate-risk (endometrioid histology: IA G3, IB G1, IB G2) patients, SNLB has not shown a clear benefit in survival when performing systematic lymphadenectomy. This group does, however, have a greater risk of lymphatic involvement and typically undergo adjuvant therapy. SLNB in both patient groups has been shown to detect 2–3 times more cases of metastatic EC than lymphadenectomy, without changing the disease prognosis [87, 110]. These results justify extending the technique to low to intermediate-risk, with the recommendation of including it in an algorithm or surgical protocol that includes the implementation when faced with failure of the technique. The potential benefit of detecting metastatic SLN in low-risk patients is however diluted by the low incidence of cases and the high proportion of low tumour volume. It appears we need to clarify the role of SLNB and the effect of low tumour volume, which is more frequently detected in this group [87, 110].

Two randomised clinical trials did not show that lymphadenectomy changed overall survival or relapse rates in high-risk patients [111–113], although retrospective series did show this change [114, 115]. The implementation of pelvic and paraaortic lymphadenectomy has been systematised due to the higher rate of lymphatic metastases and poorer prognosis associated with their detection. In contrast, sceptics of lymphadenectomy state that routine nodal assessment of high-risk patients rarely changes the recommendations for adjuvant therapy. EC (especially in high-risk cases) is not just a disease confined to the pelvis [51]. Patients with high-risk EC have a higher probability of recurrence and recidivism with or without detection of lymphatic metastases and should undergo systemic therapy regardless of the nodal state [116]. Nevertheless, published results on high-risk patients have shown no differences compared with those expected from studies that also include low- to intermediate-risk cases, with the same incidence of paraaortic metastasis estimated by lymphadenectomy. Survival data have shown no differences [30], which would assume that the benefit of SNLB in high-risk patients would be equivalent to lymphadenectomy alone [107, 108].

In terms of applying SLNB to high-risk patients, the greatest debate concerns paraaortic drainage, with a greater proportion of undetected metastatic paraaortic nonsentinel lymph nodes. A study by Naoura et al. [117] analysed 180 patients and achieved a much higher FNR in the high-risk group (2.3 vs. 20%; \( p < 0.001 \)). In this study, it was much more likely that the high-risk subtype (7 vs. 28%; \( p = 0.03 \)) and the nonendometrioid type (8 vs. 29%; \( p = 0.02 \)) were poorly assessed.

The FIRES study [75] on 385 patients represents the largest prospective series to date and included low and high-risk patients, achieving a sensitivity of 97.2% and...
an NPV of 99.6%. Fifty percent of detected metastatic SLNs were in patients with low-risk EC, the most incidental group. Only 1% were isolated paraaortic metastases, with an FNR of 2.7%. Barlin et al. [3] and the FIRES study concluded that a pelvically located SLN could be sufficient for directing the treatment [75].

In light of these results and lacking a therapeutic benefit for lymphadenectomy, the current guidelines recommend that only pelvic SLNs should be determined (and with caution) in this high-risk patient group [5, 30]. Until there is better evidence, the recommendation is to perform systematic lymphadenectomy adding SLNB, which a number of authors have labelled as ‘high-precision lymphadenectomy’.

To decrease the number of faults in the technique and the risk of underdiagnosis in high-risk cases, several research groups have performed PET-CT, excluding cases with peritoneal or lymphatic uptake [118]. Other authors have included postoperative scans or PET in cases in which the paraaortic lymphadenectomy was not completed [30]. Another option for managing high-risk patients includes implementing a combined injection pathway, ensuring both pelvic and paraaortic drainage.

The Selective Targeting of Adjuvant Therapy in Endometrial Cancer (STATEC) in the United Kingdom [30] and the Evaluation of Sentinel Node Policy in Early Stage Endometrial Carcinomas at Intermediate and High Risk of Recurrence (SENTIRAD) in France are two studies currently underway on high-risk patients, comparing the effect of SLNB versus systematic lymphadenectomy (bilateral pelvic and paraaortic) in high-risk EC in initial clinical stages. The STATEC study compares SLNB versus lymphadenectomy with the patient as the same control. The SENTIRAD study randomised patients to SLNB or lymphadenectomy, following an algorithm that performs bilateral pelvic and paraaortic lymphadenectomy when faced with a failure in detection or unilateral detection.

In 2014, the NCCN clinical guidelines assessed the technique as an acceptable alternative to systematic lymphadenectomy in selected cases [36]. In the latest edition, NCCN [5] (v.3.2019) accepted the technique as category 2A (based on lower level evidence with uniform consensus by the expert panel that the procedure was appropriate) and established a number of recommendations:

- SLN mapping may be considered

- The application of SLN mapping is appropriate for low intermediate-risk patients or those who do not tolerate standard lymphadenectomy.

- Recent evidence indicates that sentinel node mapping may also be used in high-risk histologies (serous carcinoma, clear cell carcinoma, carcinosarcoma).

- Cervical injection (superficial and optional deep) is a useful and valid option.

- The use of a radiocolloid with blue dye is recommended. The usefulness of ICG is admitted if NIR detection equipment is available.

- The key point in the normalisation of the technique is adherence to a surgical protocol.

- SLNB should be performed in institutions with experience in this procedure. The technique requires proper methodology and demands good anatomical knowledge and surgical ability. The MSKCC group recommends performing SLNB in centres with experience in endoscopic surgery and with an experience of at least 30 supervised cases during the learning process, with a specialised team that enables close collaboration between the surgeon and pathologist [32].
In the study by Papadia et al. [119], the implementation of at least 20 procedures decreased the number of SLNs obtained without compromising the FNR, improving the accuracy of the technique.

- The histological analysis should be performed by ultrastaging. Although the implication and proper management of low tumour volume are not known, its detection has a potential effect on staging.

- Lymphatic mapping implementation is contraindicated in uterine sarcoma.

Recently, the SGO published a first consensus on the application of SLNB in EC [30], which concluded with the following recommendations:

- Lymphatic mapping with cervical injection accurately predicts the detection of lymphatic metastasis, with an FNR <5%. In institutions with higher FNRs, the implementation of lymphadenectomy should be maintained (if it was previously indicated) until an FNR <5% has been ensured. Similarly, the SGO suggests adopting the indications of the American Society of Clinical Oncology applied to SLNB in breast cancer, such that lymphadenectomy is completed after SLNB in the first 20–30 cases. For low-risk patients, the recommendation is to increase the number of supervised cases during the learning process, given the lower risk of detecting lymphatic metastases [36, 120].

- The injection of radiocolloid and dye is acceptable. If ICG is available, it should be used instead.

- For patients with low- to intermediate-grade type I EC and tumour confinement to the uterus, lymphadenectomy can be skipped, performing only the SLNB.

- Although SLNB has been shown to increase the detection of lymphatic metastases, patients should be informed of the potential risk of undetected occult disease.

- The main demonstrated usefulness of SLNB is in detecting pelvic metastasis. The decision to perform paraaortic lymphadenectomy is at the surgical team’s discretion, considering the patient’s clinicopathological characteristics.

- Ultrastaging is recommended in the analysis of the SLN, although its involvement in detecting ITC requires more research.

- The application of SLNB to high-risk patients (type 1 G3 and type 2 histology) following the NCCN algorithm is feasible and has had good published results [30]. The combination of pelvic and paraaortic lymphadenectomy is reasonable until more safety and efficacy data for SLNB are available.

**Abbreviations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td>chemotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CK19</td>
<td>cytokeratin 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBRT</td>
<td>external boost radiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>endometrial cancer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Author details

Begoña Díaz de la Noval
Consultant at Gynaecology and Obstetrics, Hospital Universitario Central de Asturias, Spain

*Address all correspondence to: begodelanoval@gmail.com

© 2019 The Author(s). Licensee IntechOpen. This chapter is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.
References


Pericervical injection of $^{99m}$Tc-nanocolloid is superior to peritumoral injection for sentinel lymph node detection of endometrial cancer in SPECT/CT. Clinical Nuclear Medicine. 2016;41(12):927-932


[54] Sinno AK, Fader AN, Roche KL, Giuntoli RL, Tanner EJ. A comparison of...


This book is a collection of in-depth chapters on many aspects of contemporary cancer treatment. Written by experts worldwide, each chapter provides a detailed summary of the state-of-the-art knowledge in the area, with extensive references and clear and informative diagrams. The volume is divided into two sections: “Basic Science” and “Clinical Challenges.” The five chapters in the first section cover MicroRNA, the role of angiogenesis in the tumor microenvironment, microbial metabolites in the gastrointestinal microenvironment, the role of dendritic cells in anti-tumor immunity, and challenges of current cancer biomarkers. The two chapters in the second section cover pediatric CNS tumors and the role of sentinel node biopsy in endometrial cancer. The information in this book is designed for cancer clinicians and interested readers to whom this knowledge is important for focusing research and improving patient outcomes.